2016

Cadillac

# ATS
# ATS V-Series

cadillac.com (U.S.)
cadillac.gm.ca (Canada)
cadillac.com.mx (Mexico)

# Contents

Introduction ..... 2
In Brief ..... 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows ..... 30
Seats and Restraints ..... 53
Storage ..... 102
Instruments and Controls ..... 104
Lighting ..... 160
Infotainment System ..... 168
Climate Controls ..... 203
Driving and Operating ..... 214
Vehicle Care ..... 290
Service and Maintenance ..... 377
Technical Data ..... 393
Customer Information ..... 398
Reporting Safety Defects ..... 408
OnStar ..... 411
Index ..... 421

# Introduction

The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, the CADILLAC Emblem, and CADILLAC ATS are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Cadillac Motor Car Division wherever it appears in this manual.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on the vehicle because of optional equipment that was not purchased on the vehicle, model variants, country specifications, features/applications that may not be available in your region, or changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual.

Refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm the features.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

## Canadian Vehicle Owners

### Propriétaires Canadiens

A French language manual can be obtained from your dealer, at www.helminc.com, or from:

On peut obtenir un exemplaire de ce guide en français auprès du concessionnaire ou à l'adresse suivante:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170

## Using this Manual

To quickly locate information about the vehicle, use the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 22990231 B Second Printing

©2015 General Motors LLC. All Rights Reserved.

## Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

| ⚠ Danger |
| --- |
| Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death. |

| ⚠ Warning |
| --- |
| Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death. |

| Caution |
| --- |
| Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage. |

A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

## Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

: Shown when the owner manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when the service manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when there is more information on another page — “see page.”

### Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Audio Steering Wheel Controls or OnStar® (if equipped)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Certified Technician

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Do Not Puncture

: Do Not Service

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Flame/Fire Prohibited

: Flammable

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: Heated Steering Wheel

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Remote Vehicle Start

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Tire Pressure Monitor

: Traction Control/StabiliTrak®

: Under Pressure

: Windshield Washer Fluid

# In Brief


## Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel Overview . . . . . 6

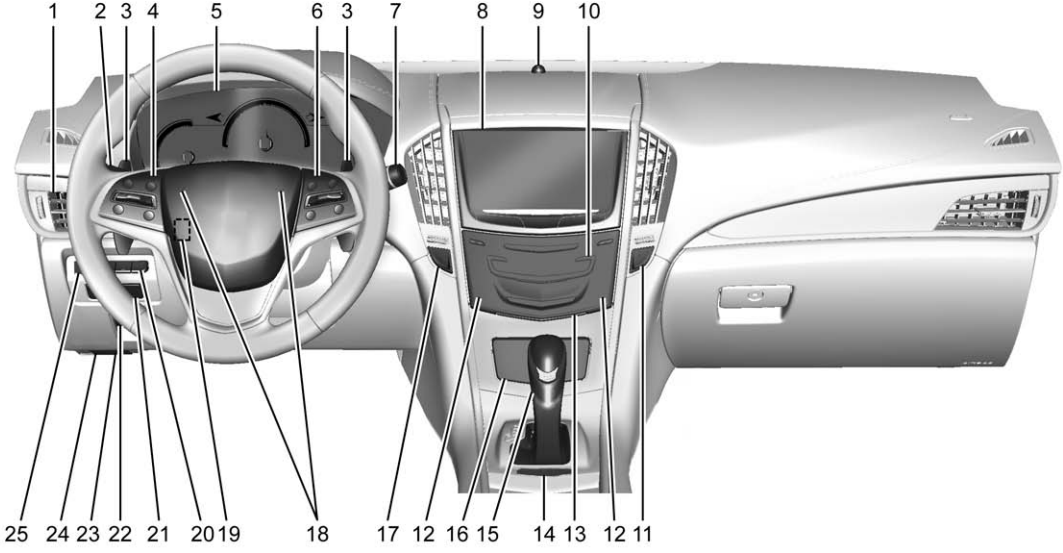
## Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information . . . . . 8
Stop/Start System . . . . . 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System . . . . . 8
Remote Vehicle Start . . . . . 9
Door Locks . . . . . 9
Trunk . . . . . 10
Windows . . . . . 10
Seat Adjustment . . . . . 11
Memory Features . . . . . 14
Second Row Seats . . . . . 14
Heated Seats . . . . . 14
Head Restraint Adjustment . . . . 15
Safety Belts . . . . . 15
Passenger Sensing System . . . 16
Mirror Adjustment . . . . . 16
Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . . 17
Interior Lighting . . . . . 17
Exterior Lighting . . . . . 18
Windshield Wiper/Washer . . . . . 19
Climate Controls . . . . . 19
Transmission . . . . . 21

## Vehicle Features
Infotainment System . . . . . 21
Radio(s) . . . . . 21
Satellite Radio . . . . . 22
Portable Audio Devices . . . . . 22
Bluetooth® . . . . . 22
Steering Wheel Controls . . . . . 23
Cruise Control . . . . . 23
Driver Information Center (DIC) . . . . . 24
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System . . . . . 24
Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System . . . . . 24
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) . . . . . 25
Lane Change Alert (LCA) . . . . . 25
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . . 25
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System . . . . . 25
Parking Assist . . . . . 25
Rear Automatic Braking (RAB) System . . . . . 26
Power Outlets . . . . . 26
Universal Remote System . . . . . 26
Sunroof . . . . . 26

## Performance and Maintenance
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control . . . . . 27
Tire Pressure Monitor . . . . . 28
Engine Oil Life System . . . . . 28
Driving for Better Fuel Economy . . . . . 29
Roadside Service . . . . . 29

# Instrument Panel

## Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Air Vents* ⇨ *212*.
2. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *160*.

   Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *164*.
3. Tap Shift Controls (If Equipped). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *241*.
4. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256*.

   *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258* (If Equipped).

   *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270* (If Equipped).

   *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *106* (If Equipped).

   *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249* (ATS-V).

   *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *106*.
5. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

   Driver Information Center (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.
6. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *106* (If Equipped).
7. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *107*.
8. *Infotainment* ⇨ *168*.
9. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *163*.
10. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *203* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *207*.
11. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *164*.
12. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62* (If Equipped).
13. *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *102* (If Equipped).

    Wireless Charging Pad (If Equipped) (Out of View). See *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *111*.
14. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249* (ATS).

    Stop/Start Disable Button (If Equipped). See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *232*.

    Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Manual Transmission). See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.

    MODE Button (ATS only) or ∧ /∨ Button (ATS/V only). See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*.
15. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *239* or *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *242* (If Equipped).
16. Storage Bin. See *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *102*.
17. ENGINE START/STOP Button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *230*.
18. *Horn* ⇨ *107*.
19. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *105*.
20. *Head-Up Display (HUD)* ⇨ *132* (If Equipped).
21. Parking Assist Button. See *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *266*.

    *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *277* (If Equipped).

22. Electric Parking Brake (If Equipped, Automatic Transmission). See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.
23. Data Link Connector (DLC) (Out of View). See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121*.
24. Hood Release (Out of View). See *Hood* ⇨ *293*.
25. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *165*.

# Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

## Stop/Start System

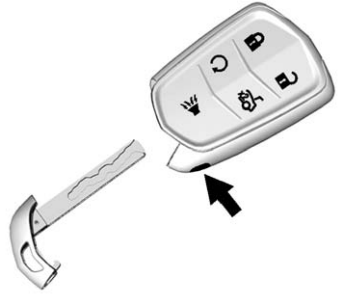
The vehicle may have a fuel saving stop/start system to shut off the engine and help conserve fuel.

When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal is pushed, the engine will restart.

The automatic engine stop/start function can be disabled using the switch. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *232*.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter may be used to lock and unlock the doors from up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.



**With Remote Start Shown, Without Similar**

**:** Press to lock all doors.

**:** Press to unlock the driver door or all doors, depending on the vehicle personalization settings.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

**:** Press and release to initiate vehicle locator.

Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm.

Press again or start the vehicle to cancel the panic alarm.

x2 : Press twice quickly to release the trunk.

Press the key release button near the bottom of the transmitter to remove the key. The key can be used for the driver door and the glove box.

See *Keys* ⇨ *30* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, the engine can be started from outside of the vehicle.

### Starting the Vehicle

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash.
3. Start the vehicle normally after entering.

When the vehicle starts, the parking lamps will turn on.

Remote start can be extended.

### Canceling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Press and hold until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then off.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

## Door Locks

To lock or unlock a door manually:

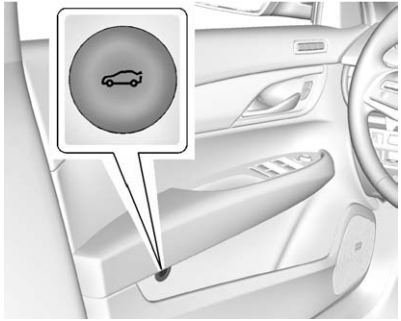
- From the outside, if the vehicle is equipped with Keyless Access, press the button on the door handle when the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is within range. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.
- Use the key in the front driver door, or if equipped, in the passenger door key cylinder. The key cylinder is covered by a cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*.
- From the inside, to lock a rear door, if equipped, push down on the door lock knob on top of the door. To unlock a door, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and again to open it.

### Power Door Locks

From the outside, press or on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

From the inside, press 🔓 or 🔒. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when locked. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *40*.

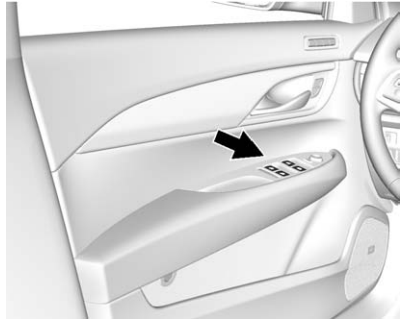
## Trunk



**Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar**

To open the trunk, the vehicle must be off or with the shift lever in P (Park). Press 🚗 from inside the vehicle, press 🔒 twice quickly on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate after unlocking all doors. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31* and *Trunk* ⇨ *42*.

## Windows



**Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar**

Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it. The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

The power window switches on the driver door control all the windows. Each passenger door has a switch that controls only that window.

On coupe models, the windows will lower to a predetermined position. Press the switch again to lower the window fully.

See *Power Windows* ⇨ *49*.

## Seat Adjustment

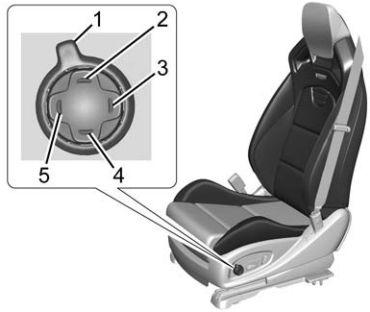
### Power Seats

**High Performance Seat**

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If equipped, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

### V-Series Seat Adjustment



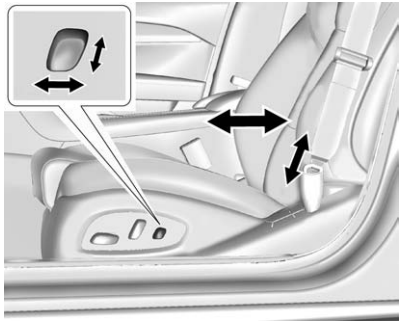

**High Performance Seat**

1. Feature Select
2. Up
3. Rearward
4. Down
5. Forward

- Move Feature Select (1) to display seat adjustments on the center stack. Press and release or hold to scroll through features.
- Press Up (2) to make upward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Rearward (3) to make rearward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Down (4) to make downward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Forward (5) to make forward adjustments of the selected feature.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *56*.

## Lumbar Adjustment

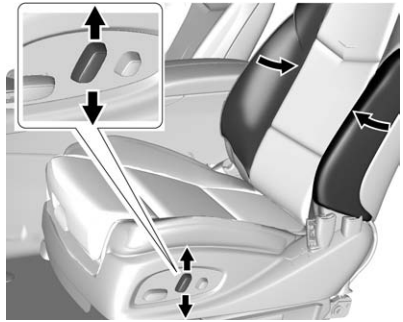


**Base Seat**

To adjust the lumbar and bolster support, if equipped:

- Press and hold the adjustment control forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the adjustment control up or down to increase or decrease seatback bolster support, if equipped.

**Bolster Adjustment**



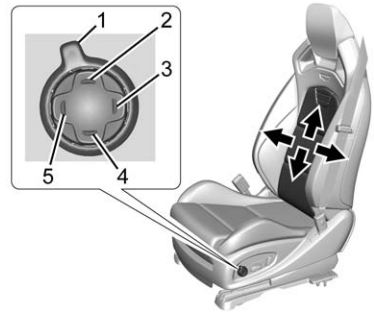
If equipped, to increase or decrease the seatback bolster support, press and hold the recliner control up and down.

See *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

## V-Series Bolster Support

### 4–Way Lumbar Support

To adjust lumbar support, if equipped:

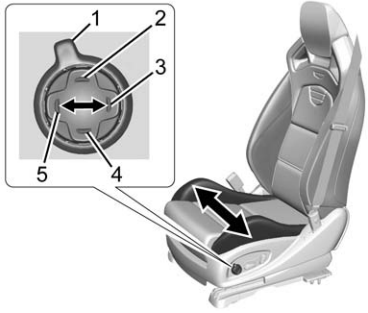



**High Performance Seat**

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar support up or down.

### Cushion Bolster

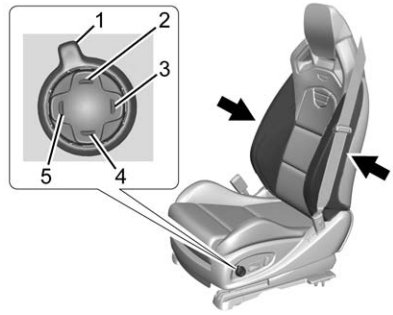
To adjust cushion bolster support, if equipped:




- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to bolster support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust bolster support inward or outward.

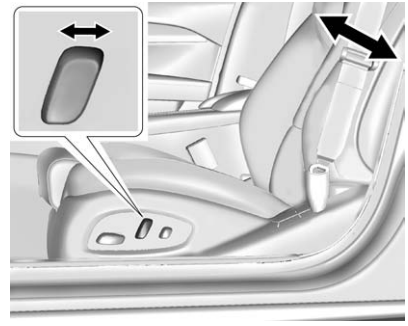
### Back Bolster Support

To adjust back bolster support, if equipped:




- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to upper back support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust back support forward or rearward.

### Reclining Seatbacks



**Base Seat**

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

**High Performance Seat**

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

See *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *59*.

## Memory Features

If equipped, the 1, 2, SET, and (Exit) buttons on the driver door are used to manually save and recall memory settings for the driver seat and outside mirrors.

Automatic Memory Recall and/or Easy Exit Recall features may be enabled in the vehicle personalization menus to automatically recall positions stored to the 1, 2, and buttons.

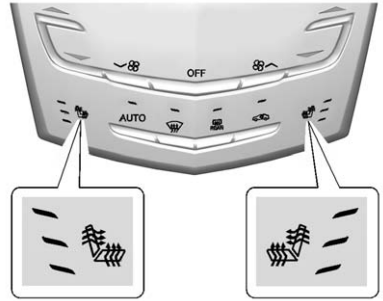
See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Second Row Seats

The rear seatbacks can be folded down to increase cargo space.

See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *63*.

## Heated Seats




**Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar**

If available, the buttons are near the climate controls on the center stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press / or / to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62*.

### Auto Heated Seats

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack. Use the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack to turn auto heated seats off.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated seats feature will not activate that seat. The auto heated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalization menu.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Head Restraint Adjustment

If equipped with base seats, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

If equipped with high performance seats, the vehicle's front seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *54* and *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *56*.

## Safety Belts

Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly:

- *Safety Belts* ⇨ *65*.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* ⇨ *66*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *67*.

- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90*.

## Passenger Sensing System

**United States**

**Canada and Mexico**

The passenger sensing system will turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77*.

The passenger airbag status indicator lights on the overhead console are visible when the vehicle is started. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *120*.

## Mirror Adjustment

### Exterior Mirrors

1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

The vehicle has manual folding mirrors. See *Folding Mirrors* ⇨ *48*.

### Interior Mirrors

#### Adjustment

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view behind the vehicle.

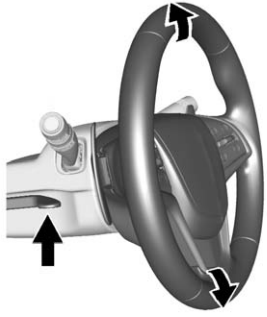
#### Manual Rearview Mirror

For vehicles with a manual rearview mirror, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind. See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *49*.

#### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

For vehicles with an automatic dimming rearview mirror, the mirror will automatically reduce the glare from the headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *49*.

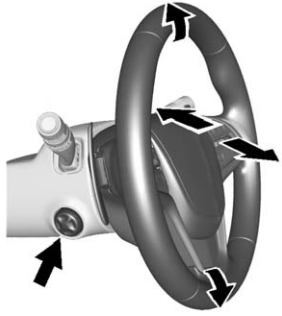
## Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

### Power Tilt and Telescoping Wheel



If equipped, the control is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.
- Push the control forward or rearward to move the steering wheel toward the front or rear of the vehicle.

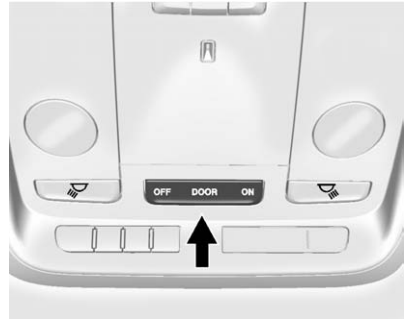
Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

To set the power tilt wheel memory position, see *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60*.

## Interior Lighting

### Dome Lamp

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.




To change the dome lamp settings, press the following:

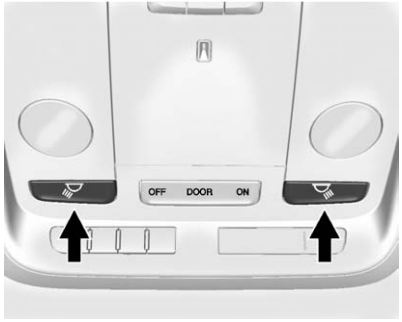
**OFF :** Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

**DOOR :** The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

**ON :** Turns the lamp on.

**Reading Lamps**

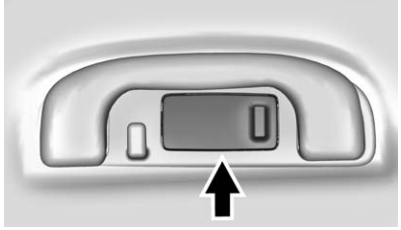
There are front and rear reading lamps. These lamps come on when any door is opened.




The front reading lamps are in the overhead console.

Press ⚟ or ⚟ to turn the lamps on or off.

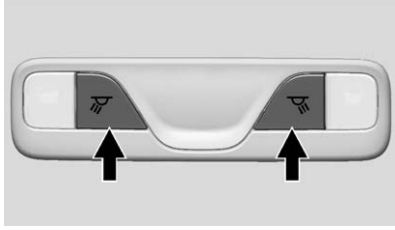
**Sedan**



The rear reading lamps are over the rear passenger doors.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

**Coupe**



The rear reading lamps are in the headliner.

Press ⚟ or ⚟ to turn the lamps on or off.

For more information on interior lighting, see *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *165*.

## Exterior Lighting

The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode. In Canada, the headlamps will automatically reactivate when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) on automatic transmission vehicles,

and when the parking brake is released on manual transmission vehicles.

**AUTO :** Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

**:** Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

**:** Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

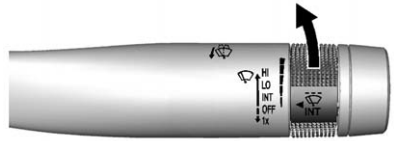
See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *160* and *Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)* ⇨ *163*.

## Windshield Wiper/Washer

With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the lever to select the wiper speed.

**HI :** Use for fast wipes.

**LO :** Use for slow wipes.




**INT :** Use this setting for intermittent wipes or Rainsense™, if equipped. For intermittent wipes, move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

If equipped with Rainsense and the feature is enabled in vehicle personalization, move the windshield wiper lever to INT and turn the INT band to adjust the sensitivity to moisture.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

To turn the Rainsense feature on or off, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

**OFF :** Use to turn the wipers off.

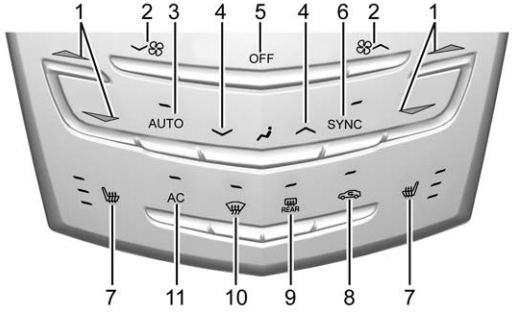
**1X :** For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down. For several wipes, hold the lever down.

**:** Pull the lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *107*.

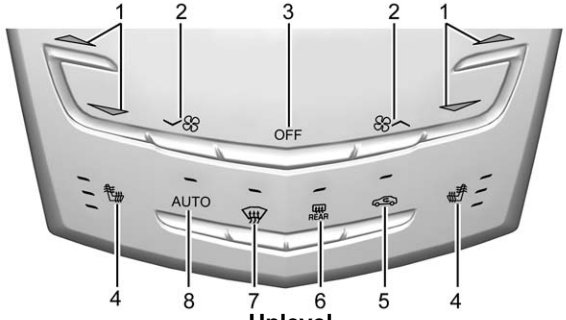
## Climate Controls

If equipped with one of these systems, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.




**Base**

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
4. Air Delivery Mode Control
5. OFF (Fan)
6. SYNC (Synchronized Temperature)
7. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
8. Recirculation
9. Rear Window Defogger
10. Defrost
11. AC (Air Conditioning)



**Uplevel**

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. OFF (Fan)
4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger
7. Defrost
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *203* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *207*.

## Transmission

### Driver Shift Control (DSC) or Tap Shift

Vehicles equipped with DSC allow shifting an automatic transmission similar to a manual transmission. DSC can be enabled through the shift lever, or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel (if equipped). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *241*.

# Vehicle Features

## Infotainment System

See the infotainment manual for information on the radio, audio players, phone, navigation system, and voice or speech recognition. There is also information on settings and downloadable applications (if equipped).

## Radio(s)

⏻ **:** Press to turn the system on and off. Turn to increase or decrease the volume.

**RADIO :** Press to choose between FM, AM, and SiriusXM®, if equipped.

⌂ **:** Press to go to the Home Page.

**MENU :** Press to select a menu.

**MEDIA :** Press to change the audio source between CD, USB, SD Card, and AUX.

⏮ **:** Press to seek the previous station or track.

⏭ : Press to seek the next station or track.

See *Overview* ⇨ *170* about these and other radio features.

### Favorites

Favorites can be stored including radio stations and media.

To display the favorites page, press the FAV button on the radio faceplate. Continue pressing the FAV button to toggle through the remaining visible favorite pages.

See “Manage Favorites” in “Radio Setup” under *Home Page* ⇨ *171*.

### Setting the Clock

See *Clock (Base Radio)* ⇨ *109* or *Clock (Uplevel Radio)* ⇨ *109*.

## Satellite Radio

Vehicles with a SiriusXM® satellite radio tuner and a valid SiriusXM satellite radio subscription can receive SiriusXM programming.

### SiriusXM Satellite Radio Service

SiriusXM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. SiriusXM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound. A fee is required to receive the SiriusXM service.

For more information refer to:

- www.siriusxm.com or call 1-866-635-2349 (U.S.).
- www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-209-0079 (Canada).

See *Satellite Radio* ⇨ *176*.

## Portable Audio Devices

This vehicle has a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) auxiliary input and a USB port in the center console under the armrest, and if equipped, one USB port in the storage behind the climate control system. See *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *102*. External devices such as iPods®, laptop computers, MP3 players, CD changers, and USB storage devices may be connected, depending on the audio system.

See *Auxiliary Jack* ⇨ *184* and *USB Port* ⇨ *181*.

## Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth system allows users with a Bluetooth-enabled cell phone to make and receive hands-free calls using the vehicle audio system and controls.

The Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired with the in-vehicle Bluetooth system before it can be used in the vehicle. Not all phones will support all functions.

See *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ *192* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ *196* or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *191*.

## Steering Wheel Controls

If equipped with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

**:** Press to talk or interact with OnStar® and Bluetooth®. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *411* and *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ *192* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ *196* or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *191*.

**:** Press to decline an incoming call, or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

**< or > :** Press the five-way control to the left or right to go to the previous or next area in the display or to the previous or next menu.

**∧ or ∨ :** Press the five-way control up or down to go up or down in a list. Press to go up or down a page.

**SEL :** Press to select a highlighted menu item.

**⊼ or ⊽ :** Press or press and hold to go to the next or previous favorite or seek a station when listening to the radio.

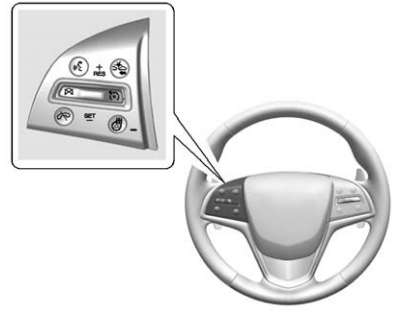
Press or press and hold to go to the next or previous track when listening to a media source.

These buttons can be configured, see *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

**+ or − :** Press to increase or decrease the volume.

See *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *106*.

## Cruise Control




**:** Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

**+RES :** If there is a set speed in memory, press the control up briefly to resume to that speed or hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

**SET− :** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET− down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET− down to the second detent.

**:** Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256* or *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258* (if equipped).

## Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC display is in the instrument cluster. It shows the status of many vehicle systems.

**∧ or ∨ :** Press to move up or down in a list.

**< or > :** Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL :** Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

## Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, FCA may help avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. FCA provides a green indicator, , when a vehicle is detected ahead. This indicator displays amber if you follow a vehicle much too closely. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a flashing red alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270*.

## Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it also has FAB, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is traveling in the same direction that you may be about to

crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear.

See *Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System* ⇨ *273*.

## Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert as the lane marking is crossed. The system will not assist or alert if it detects that you are actively steering. Override LKA by turning the steering wheel. LKA uses a camera to detect lane markings between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

See *Lane Departure Warning (LDW)* ⇨ *276* and *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *277*.

## Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. The LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system is included as part of the LCA system.

See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *274* and *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *275*.

## Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

If equipped, RVC displays a view of the area behind the vehicle on the center stack display when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse) to aid with parking and low-speed backing maneuvers.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

If equipped, the RCTA system uses a triangle with an arrow displayed on the RVC screen to warn of traffic behind your vehicle that may cross your vehicle's path while in R (Reverse). In addition, beeps will sound, or the driver seat will pulse.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

## Parking Assist

If equipped, Rear Parking Assist (RPA) uses sensors on the rear bumper to assist with parking and avoiding objects while in R (Reverse). It operates at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph). RPA may display a warning triangle on the Rear Vision Camera screen and a graphic on the instrument cluster to provide the object distance. In addition, multiple beeps or seat pulses may occur if very close to an object.

The vehicle may also have the Front Parking Assist system.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

## Rear Automatic Braking (RAB) System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) it also has the RAB system, which is designed to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by backing crashes when the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse). If the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

## Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the front storage bin below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the center floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *110*.

## Universal Remote System

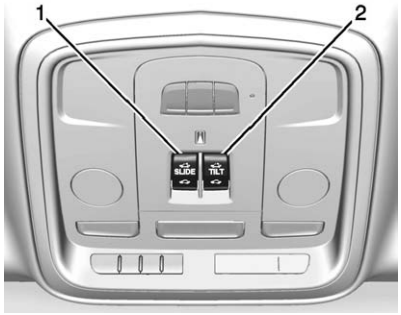
If equipped, this system provides a way to replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the Universal Remote system. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you with programming the Universal Remote system.

See *Universal Remote System* ⇨ *156*.

## Sunroof

If equipped, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active, to operate the sunroof. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *230* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.




1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

**Open/Close :** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the first detent and hold to open or close the sunroof.

**Express Open/Express Close :** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the second detent and release to express open or express close the sunroof.

**Vent Feature :** Press the rear of the switch (2) and release to express open the vent. Press the front of the switch (2) and release to express close the vent.

Manually open the sunshade.

See *Sunroof* ⇨ *52*.

# Performance and Maintenance

## Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The traction control system limits wheel spin. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

The StabiliTrak system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system is on when the vehicle is started.

- To turn off traction control, press and release OFF on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V). TC illuminates in the instrument cluster and the appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *143*.
- Press and release OFF again to turn traction control back on.

- To turn off both Traction Control and StabiliTrak, press and hold on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V) until and illuminate in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *143*.
- Press and release again to turn on both systems.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

The vehicle has Driver Mode Control and may have Competitive Driving Mode. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251* and *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

## Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).

The low tire pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. Maintain the correct tire pressures.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *341*.

## Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

### Resetting the Oil Life System

1. Using the DIC controls on the right side of the steering wheel, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*. When remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ *138*.
2. Press SEL on the DIC controls and hold SEL down for a few seconds to clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and reset the oil life at 100%.

Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition on with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*.

## Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

## Roadside Service

U.S.: 1-800-224-1400

Canada: 1-800-882-1112

TTY Users (U.S. Only): 1-888-889-2438

New Cadillac owners are automatically enrolled in the Roadside Service Program.

See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

# Keys, Doors, and Windows

**Keys and Locks**
Keys . . . . . 30
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System . . . . . 31
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation . . . . . 31
Remote Vehicle Start . . . . . 37
Door Locks . . . . . 39
Power Door Locks . . . . . 40
Delayed Locking . . . . . 40
Automatic Door Locks . . . . . 41
Lockout Protection . . . . . 41
Safety Locks (Sedan Only) . . . . 42

**Doors**
Trunk . . . . . 42

**Vehicle Security**
Vehicle Security . . . . . 45
Vehicle Alarm System . . . . . 45
Immobilizer . . . . . 46
Immobilizer Operation . . . . . 46

**Exterior Mirrors**
Convex Mirrors . . . . . 47
Power Mirrors . . . . . 48
Folding Mirrors . . . . . 48
Heated Mirrors . . . . . 48
Reverse Tilt Mirrors . . . . . 48

**Interior Mirrors**
Interior Rearview Mirrors . . . . . 49
Manual Rearview Mirror . . . . . 49
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror . . . . . 49

**Windows**
Windows . . . . . 49
Power Windows . . . . . 49
Sun Visors . . . . . 51

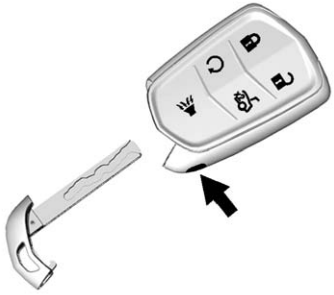
**Roof**
Sunroof . . . . . 52

# Keys and Locks

## Keys

**⚠ Warning**

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.



This key, inside the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, is used for the driver door and glove box.

To remove the key, press the button near the bottom of the transmitter, and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

Contact Roadside Service if locked out of the vehicle. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

With an active OnStar subscription, an OnStar Advisor may remotely unlock the vehicle. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *411*.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

## Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The RKE transmitter functions may work up to 60 m (197 ft) away from the vehicle.

Keep in mind that other conditions, such as those previously stated, can impact the performance of the transmitter.

**With Remote Start Shown, Without Similar**

**(Lock) :** Press to lock all doors. The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound to indicate locking. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed and enabled through the vehicle personalization, all doors will lock and then the driver door will immediately unlock. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*. If the passenger door is open when is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing may also arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *45*.

**(Unlock) :** Press to unlock the driver door or all doors. When remotely unlocking the vehicle at night, the headlamps and back-up lamps will come on for about 30 seconds to light your approach to the vehicle. The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate unlocking.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

Pressing will disarm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *45*.

Press and hold until the windows fully open. Windows will not operate unless remote window operation is enabled. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*

**(Remote Start) :** If equipped, press and release and then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

**(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm) :** Press and release to initiate vehicle locator. The exterior lamps flash and the horn chirps three times. Press and hold for three seconds to sound the panic alarm. The horn sounds and the turn signal lamps flash for 30 seconds, or until is pressed again or the vehicle is started.

**(Remote Trunk Release) :** Press twice quickly to release the trunk.

## Keyless Access Operation

Some vehicles have the Keyless Access system that lets you lock and unlock the doors and access the trunk without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket, purse, briefcase, etc. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the door being opened. If the vehicle has this feature, there will be a button on the outside door handles.

The Keyless Access system can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press from the driver door. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

**Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Driver Door**

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on the driver door handle will unlock the driver door. If the lock/unlock button is pressed again within five seconds, all passenger doors will unlock.

**Driver Door Shown, Passenger Similar**

Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- It has been more than five seconds since the first lock/unlock button press.
- Two lock/unlock button presses were used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

**Keyless Unlocking/Locking from the Passenger Doors**

When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a passenger door handle will unlock all doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause all doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The lock/unlock button was used to unlock all doors.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

**Passive Locking**

If equipped with Keyless Access, the vehicle will lock several seconds after all doors are closed if the vehicle is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed or none remain in the vehicle.

If other electronic devices interfere with the RKE transmitter signal, the vehicle may not detect the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. If passive locking is enabled, the doors may lock with the RKE

transmitter inside the vehicle. Do not leave the RKE transmitter in an unattended vehicle.

### Temporary Disable Passive Locking Feature

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding 🔓 on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until 🔒 on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

To customize the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

### Keyless Trunk Opening

Press the touch pad on the trunk to open the trunk if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft).

## Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work. Each vehicle can have up to eight transmitters matched to it.

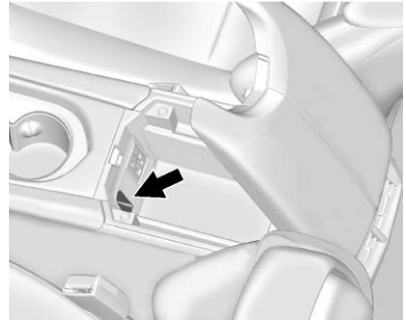
### Programming with a Recognized Transmitter

A new transmitter can be programmed to the vehicle when there is one recognized transmitter.

To program, the vehicle must be off and all transmitters, both currently recognized and new, must be with you.

1. Remove the vehicle key from the recognized transmitter.
2. Place the recognized transmitter(s) in the cupholder.
3. Remove the key lock cylinder cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*. Insert the vehicle key into the key lock cylinder on the driver door handle, then turn the key counterclockwise to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

   The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays READY TO LEARN ELECTRONIC KEY #2, 3, 4, ETC.



4. Place the new transmitter into the transmitter pocket. The center console storage area will need to be opened to access the transmitter pocket.

5. Press the ENGINE START/STOP button. When the transmitter is learned, the DIC display will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.
6. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔓 or 🔒 on the transmitter.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 4–6.

   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for approximately 12 seconds to exit programming mode.
7. Return the vehicle key back into the transmitter.

**Programming without a Recognized Transmitter**

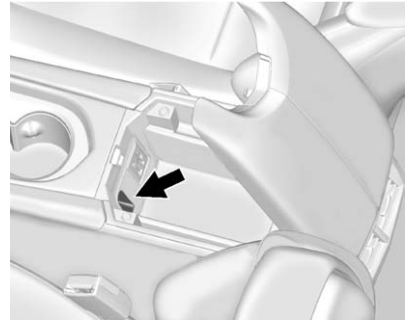
If there are no currently recognized transmitters available, follow this procedure to program up to eight transmitters. This feature is not available in Canada. This procedure will take approximately 30 minutes to complete. The vehicle must be off and all transmitters to be programmed must be with you.

1. Remove the vehicle key from the transmitter.
2. Remove the key lock cylinder cap. See *Door Locks* ⇨ *39*. Insert the vehicle key into the key lock cylinder on the driver door handle, then turn the key counterclockwise to the unlock position five times within 10 seconds.

   The Driver Information Center (DIC) displays REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.
3. Wait for 10 minutes until the DIC displays PRESS ENGINE START BUTTON TO LEARN and then press the ENGINE START/STOP button.

   The DIC display will again show REMOTE LEARN PENDING, PLEASE WAIT.
4. Repeat Step 3 two additional times. After the third time all previously known transmitters will no longer work with the vehicle. Remaining transmitters can be relearned during the next steps.

   The DIC display should now show READY FOR REMOTE # 1.



5. Place the new transmitter in the transmitter pocket. The center console storage area will need to be opened to access the transmitter pocket.

6. Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button. When the transmitter is learned, the DIC display will show that it is ready to program the next transmitter.
7. Remove the transmitter from the transmitter pocket and press 🔓 or 🔒 on the transmitter.

   To program additional transmitters, repeat Steps 5–7.

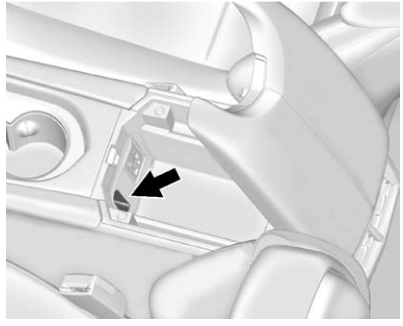
   When all additional transmitters are programmed, press and hold the ENGINE START/ STOP button for approximately 12 seconds to exit programming mode.
8. Return the vehicle key back into the transmitter.

## Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

If the transmitter battery is weak or if there is interference with the signal, the DIC may display a message when you try to start the vehicle. See *Key and Lock Messages* ⇨ *139*.

To start the vehicle:

1. Open the center console storage area and the storage tray.



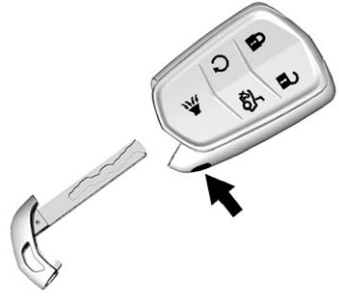
2. Place the transmitter in the transmitter pocket.
3. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/ STOP button.

   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

## Battery Replacement

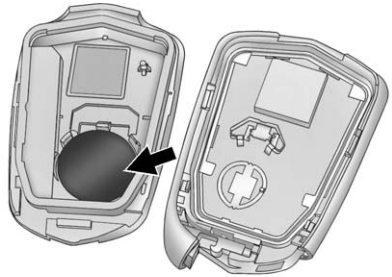
| Caution |
| --- |
| When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter. |

Replace the battery if the REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY message displays in the DIC.



1. Press the button on the side of the transmitter near the bottom and pull the key out.

2. Separate the two halves of the transmitter using a flat tool inserted into the bottom center of the transmitter. Do not use the key slot.



3. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
4. Insert the new battery on the back housing, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Align the front and back housing then snap the transmitter together.

## Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, this feature allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

**(Remote Vehicle Start) :** This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear window defogger may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear defog indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If the vehicle has heated seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62*.

Laws in some local communities may restrict the use of remote starters. For example, some laws may require a person using remote start to have the vehicle in view. Check local regulations for any requirements.

If your vehicle is low on fuel, do not use the remote start feature. The vehicle may run out of fuel.

The RKE transmitter range may be less while the vehicle is running.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *31*.

**Starting the Engine Using Remote Start**

1. Press and release 🔒 on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold ⟲ for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. This confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

   During the remote start, the doors will be locked and the parking lamps will remain on as long as the engine is running.

   The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a time extension is done or the ignition is put in ON/RUN/START.
3. Press the brake pedal and select the ON/RUN/START ignition mode to drive the vehicle.

**Extending Engine Run Time**

The engine run time can also be extended by another 10 minutes, if during the first 10 minutes Steps 1 and 2 are repeated while the engine is still running. An extension can be requested, 30 seconds after starting. This provides a total of 20 minutes.

The remote start can only be extended once.

A maximum of two remote starts, or a remote start with an extension, are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle's ignition must be changed to ON/RUN/START and then back to OFF before the remote start procedure can be used again.

**Canceling a Remote Start**

To cancel a remote start, do any of the following:

- Press and hold ⟲ until the parking lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Turn the vehicle on and then back off.

**Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work**

The remote start will not operate if any of the following occur:

- The ignition is in any mode other than OFF.
- The transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The hood is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

## Door Locks

**⚠ Warning**

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.
- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when slowing or stopping the vehicle. Lock the doors to help prevent this from happening.

### Inside the Vehicle

On the rear doors, if equipped, push down on the door lock knob to lock the door manually. Pull once on the door handle to unlock the door and again to open the door.

Press the power door lock switch to lock or unlock all doors automatically. See *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *40*.

### Outside the Vehicle

Use the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, the key cylinder on the driver front door, or the key cylinder on the passenger front door, if equipped. The key cylinder is covered with a cap.

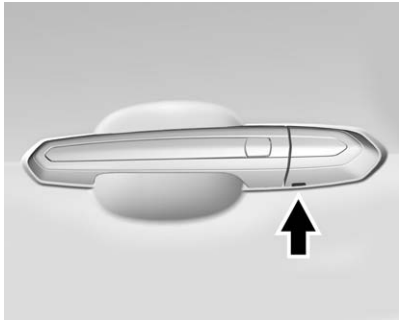
### Keyless Access

If equipped, use the Keyless Access system to lock and unlock the door. When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the driver door handle, press the lock/unlock button. When unlocking from the driver door, the first press unlocks that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

**Key Cylinder Access**

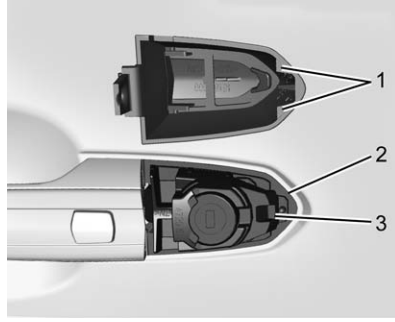
To access the key cylinder:

1. Pull the door handle to the open position.



2. Insert the key into the slot on the bottom of the cap and pry outward.
3. Move the cap rearward and remove.

To replace the cap:




Pull the door handle open and insert the tabs (1) on the rear of the cap into the space between the seal (2) and the metal base (3). Snap into place.

## Power Door Locks

**(Lock) :** Press to lock the doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

**(Unlock) :** Press to unlock the doors.

## Delayed Locking

This feature delays the actual locking of the doors until five seconds after all doors are closed.

Delayed locking can only be turned on when the Unlocked Door Anti Lockout feature has been turned off.

When 🔒 is pressed on the power door lock switch with the door open, a chime will sound three times indicating that delayed locking is active.

The doors will then lock automatically five seconds after all doors are closed. If a door is reopened before five seconds have elapsed, the five-second timer will reset once all the doors are closed again.

Press 🔒 on the door lock switch again, or press 🔒 on the RKE transmitter, to override this feature and lock the doors immediately.

Delayed locking can be programmed through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Automatic Door Locks

The vehicle is programmed so that when the doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) for automatic transmissions, or the vehicle speed is above 13 km/h (8 mph) for manual transmissions, the doors will lock.

To unlock the doors:

- Press an unlock switch on a door.
- For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift the transmission into P (Park).
- For vehicles with a manual transmission, turn the vehicle off.

The power door locks can be programmed through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Lockout Protection

If the vehicle is in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in the vehicle and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the vehicle is off with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock after closing all of the doors.

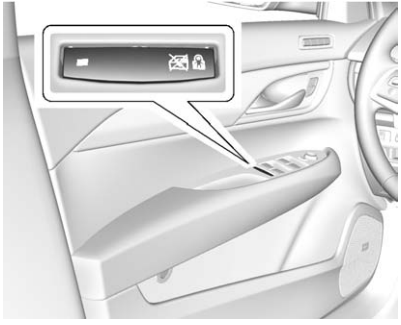
This feature can be manually overridden with the driver door open by pressing and holding 🔒 on the power door lock switch.

### Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out

When this feature is on and door locking is requested with the driver door open, all doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock. The driver door must be closed before locking is requested for all doors to remain locked. When this feature is off, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

This feature can also be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Safety Locks (Sedan Only)



The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

Press to activate the safety locks on the rear doors. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

The rear door power windows are also disabled. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *49*.

Press again to deactivate the safety locks.

If an inside rear door handle is being pulled at the same time the safety lock is deactivated, only that door will remain locked and the indicator light may flash. Release the handle, then press the safety lock twice to deactivate the safety locks.

# Doors

## Trunk

**⚠ Warning**

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air

(Continued)

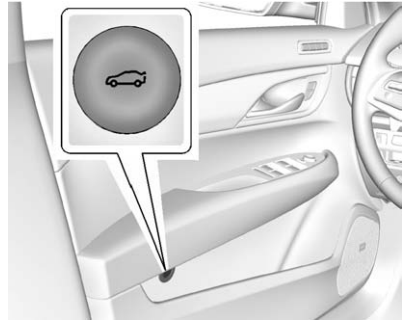
**Warning (Continued)**

and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See "Climate Control Systems" in the Index.

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*.

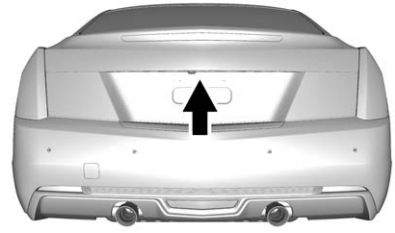
## Trunk Lock Release



**Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar**

To open the trunk, the vehicle must be off or the shift lever must be in P (Park).

- Press on the driver door.
- Press twice quickly on the RKE transmitter.



- Press the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate when all doors are unlocked.

If equipped with Keyless Access, the trunk may also be opened while the vehicle is locked by pressing the touch pad on the rear of the trunk above the license plate while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m (3 ft) of the rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle is ever without power, the trunk area can still be accessed.

To access by the rear seat pass-through door, if equipped:

1. Fold the rear armrest down and open the pass-through door. See *Rear Seat Pass-Through Door* ⇨ *65*.
2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency trunk release handle. See “Emergency Trunk Release Handle” following.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the trunk.

To access by the folding the rear seat, if equipped:

1. Fold down the rear seatback. See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *63*.
2. Reach inward through the opening to locate the emergency trunk release handle.
3. Pull the release handle toward the front of the vehicle to open the trunk.

## Emergency Trunk Release Handle

| Caution |
| --- |
| Do not use the emergency trunk release handle as a tie-down or anchor point when securing items in the trunk as it could damage the handle. |

There is a glow-in-the-dark emergency trunk release handle on the trunk lid. This handle will glow following exposure to light. Pull the release handle to open the trunk from the inside.

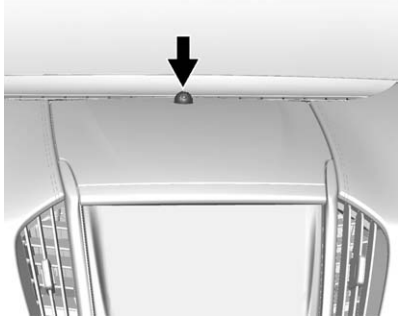
After use, return to the stored position.

# Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

## Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windshield, indicates the status of the system.

**Off :** Vehicle system is disarmed.

**On Solid :** Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

**Fast Flash :** Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the hood, or the trunk is open.

**Slow Flash :** Alarm system is armed.

### Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle in one of three ways:
   - Use the RKE transmitter.
   - Use the Keyless Access system.
   - With a door open, press the interior 🔒.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating.

   Pressing 🔒 on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter during the 10-second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

The alarm will also be activated if a passenger door, the trunk, or the hood is opened without first disarming the system. When the alarm is activated, the turn signals flash and the horn sounds for about 30 seconds. the alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorized event.

### Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated, do one of the following:

- Press 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.

- Unlock the vehicle using the Keyless Access system.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or use the Keyless Access system.

Unlocking the driver door with the key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

### How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If 🔓 is pressed on the RKE transmitter and the horn chirps and the lights flash three times, a previous alarm occurred while the system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC. See *Security Messages* ⇨ *145*.

### Power Sounder and Inclination Sensor

In addition to the standard theft-deterrent system features, this system may also have a power sounder and inclination sensor.

The power sounder provides an audible alarm which is distinct from the vehicle's horn. It has its own power source, and can sound an alarm if the vehicle's battery is compromised.

The inclination sensor can set off the alarm if it senses movement of the vehicle, such as a change in vehicle orientation.

## Immobilizer

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

## Immobilizer Operation

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the pushbutton start is activated to enter the ACC/ACCESSORY mode or the ON/RUN/START mode and a valid transmitter is present in the vehicle.

The security light, in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

The system has one or more RKE transmitters matched to an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes (ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, OFF), and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the center console. See *Key and Lock Messages* ⇨ *139*.

If the ignition modes will not change with the other transmitter, your vehicle needs service. If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer.

It is possible for the immobilizer system to learn new or replacement RKE transmitters. Up to eight transmitters can be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see “Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

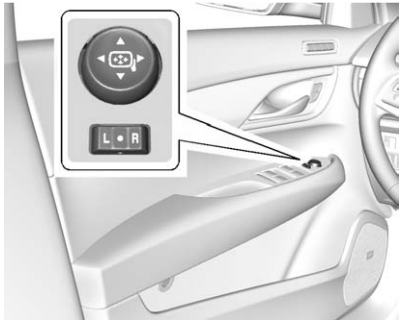
# Exterior Mirrors

## Convex Mirrors

| Caution |
| --- |
| A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes. |

The passenger side mirror is convex shaped. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver seat.

## Power Mirrors




1. Move the selector switch to L (Left) or R (Right) to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press one of the four arrows to move the mirror.
3. Move the selector switch to ● to deselect the mirror.

### Exterior Automatic Dimming Mirror

If equipped, the driver side exterior automatic dimming mirror will automatically adjust for the glare of headlamps behind.

### Memory Mirrors

The vehicle may have exterior memory mirrors. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60*.

### Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The vehicle may have Side Blind Zone Alert. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *274*.

### Turn Signal Indicator

If equipped with turn signal indicators on the mirror housings, the indicator will flash when a turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are used.

## Folding Mirrors

### Manual Folding Mirrors

The mirrors can be folded inward toward the vehicle to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

## Heated Mirrors

**(Rear Window Defogger) :** Press to heat the mirrors.

See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *203* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *207*.

## Reverse Tilt Mirrors

If equipped with memory seats, the passenger and/or driver mirror tilts to a preselected position when the vehicle is in R (Reverse). This allows the curb to be seen when parallel parking.

The mirror(s) return to the original position when:

- The vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse), or remains in R (Reverse) for about 30 seconds.
- The ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is driven in R (Reverse) above a set speed.

To turn this feature on or off, see *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

# Interior Mirrors

## Interior Rearview Mirrors

Adjust the rearview mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

## Manual Rearview Mirror

If equipped with a manual rearview mirror, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

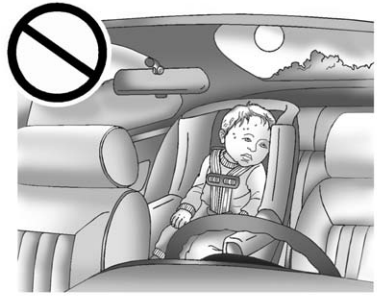
## Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

# Windows

**⚠ Warning**

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

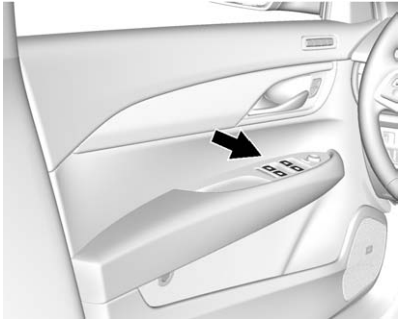


The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

## Power Windows

**⚠ Warning**

Children could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Never leave the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in a vehicle with children. When there are children in the rear seat, use the window lockout switch to prevent operation of the windows. See *Keys* ⇨ *30*.



**Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar**

The power windows only operate with the ignition in ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

The power window switches on the driver door control all the windows. Each passenger door has a switch that controls only that window.

Press the switch to lower the window. Pull the switch up to raise it.

On coupe models, the windows will lower to a predetermined position. Press the switch again to lower the window fully.

## Express-Down/Up Windows

Windows with the express feature allow the windows to be raised and lowered all the way without holding the switch.

Press or pull the switch fully and release it to activate the express feature.

The express mode can be canceled by briefly pressing or pulling the switch.

## Express Window Anti-Pinch Feature

If any object is in the path of the window when the express-up is active, the window will stop at the obstruction and auto-reverse to a preset factory position. Weather conditions such as severe icing may also cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will return to normal operation after the obstruction or condition is removed.

## Express Window Anti-Pinch Override

**⚠ Warning**

If express override is activated, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before you use express override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

The anti-pinch feature can be overridden when the ignition is in ON/RUN/START. Hold the window switch all the way up to the second position. The window will go up for as long as the switch is held. Once the switch is released, the express mode is reactivated.

In this mode, the window can close on an object in its path. Use care when using the override mode.

### Programming the Power Windows

If the vehicle battery has been recharged or disconnected, or is not working, the front power windows may need to be reprogrammed for the express-up feature to work. Before reprogramming, replace or recharge the vehicle battery.

To program:

1. With the ignition in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY, or when RAP is active, close all doors.
2. Press down the power window switch until the window is fully open.
3. Pull the power window switch up until the window is fully closed.
4. Continue holding the switch up for approximately two seconds after the window is completely closed.

The window is now reprogrammed. Repeat the process for the other windows.

### Window Lockout (Sedan Only)

This feature prevents the rear passenger windows from operating, except from the driver position.

Press to activate the window lockout. The indicator light in the switch will illuminate when activated.

The rear door safety locks are also activated. See *Safety Locks (Sedan Only)* ⇨ *42*.

Press again to deactivate the lockout switch.

If the indicator light flashes, the feature may not be working properly.

## Sun Visors

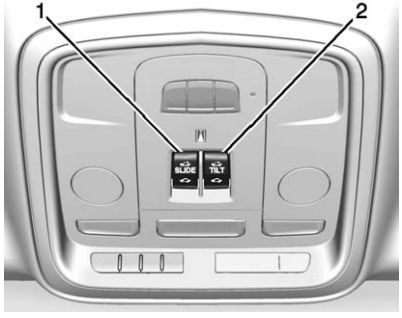
Pull the visor toward you, or move it to the side to help reduce glare.

To use the lighted mirror, lift the cover.

# Roof

## Sunroof

If equipped with a sunroof, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP), to operate the sunroof. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *230* and *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.




1. SLIDE Switch
2. TILT Switch

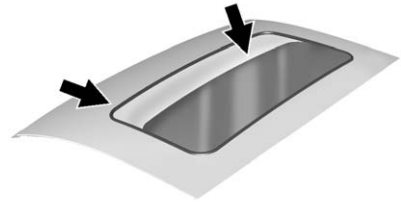
**Open/Close :** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the first detent and hold to open or close the sunroof.

**Express Open/Express Close :** Press the rear or front of the switch (1) to the second detent and release to express open or express close the sunroof.

**Vent Feature :** Press and hold the front of the switch (2) to vent the sunroof. The sunshade must be manually opened. Press and hold the rear of the switch (2) to close the sunroof vent.

### Anti-Pinch Feature

If an object is in the path of the sunroof when it is closing, the anti-pinch feature will detect the object and stop the sunroof from closing at the point of the obstruction. The sunroof then retracts away from the object.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also plug the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

# Seats and Restraints


## Head Restraints
Head Restraints . . . . . 54

## Front Seats
Easy Entry Seat . . . . . 56
Power Seat Adjustment . . . . . 56
Lumbar Adjustment . . . . . 59
Thigh Support Adjustment . . . . . 59
Reclining Seatbacks . . . . . 59
Memory Seats . . . . . 60
Heated Front Seats . . . . . 62

## Rear Seats
Rear Seats . . . . . 63
Rear Seat Pass-Through Door . . . . . 65

## Safety Belts
Safety Belts . . . . . 65
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly . . . . . 66
Lap-Shoulder Belt . . . . . 67
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy . . . . . 70
Safety Belt Extender . . . . . 70
Safety System Check . . . . . 70
Safety Belt Care . . . . . 70
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash . . . . . 71

## Airbag System
Airbag System . . . . . 71
Where Are the Airbags? . . . . . 73
When Should an Airbag Inflate? . . . . . 74
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? . . . . . 76
How Does an Airbag Restrain? . . . . . 76
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? . . . . . 76
Passenger Sensing System . . . 77
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . . . 82
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle . . . . . 82
Airbag System Check . . . . . 83
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash . . . . . 83

## Child Restraints
Older Children . . . . . 84
Infants and Young Children . . . . 85
Child Restraint Systems . . . . . 88
Where to Put the Restraint . . . . . 89
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) . . . . 90
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash . . . . . 96
Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat) . . . . . 96
Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat) . . . . . 98

# Head Restraints

If equipped with base seats, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

If equipped with high performance seats, the vehicle's front seats have head restraints in the outboard seating positions that cannot be adjusted.

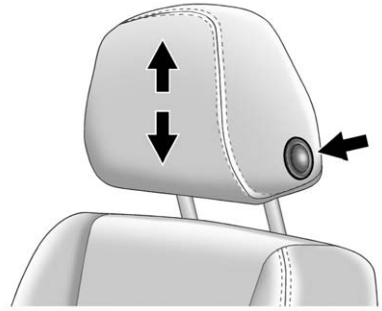
**⚠ Warning**

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

If equipped with base seats, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

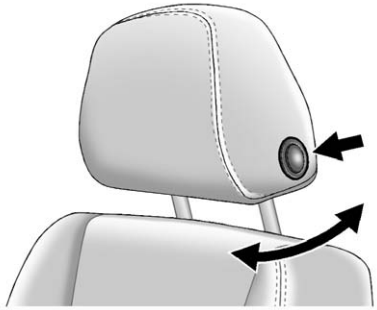
## Front Seats

If equipped, the vehicle's front seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

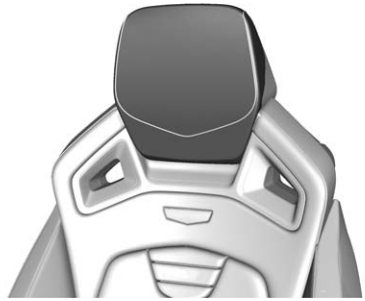


The height of the head restraint can be adjusted.

To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint, and pull up or push the head restraint down and release the button. Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.



To adjust the head restraint forward and rearward, press the button located on the side facing of the head restraint and move it forward or rearward until the desired locking position is reached. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

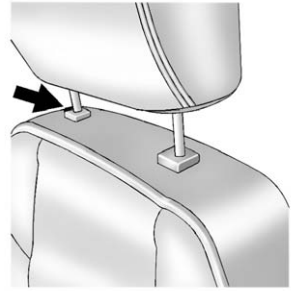


If equipped with high performance seats, the front seat outboard head restraints are not removable.

## Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seats have adjustable head restraints in the outboard seating positions.

The height of the head restraint can be adjusted. Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to make sure that it is locked in place.



To lower the head restraint, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to make sure that it is locked in place.

Rear outboard head restraints are not removable.

# Front Seats

## Easy Entry Seat

**High Performance Seat Shown**

1. Seat Adjustment Switch
2. Folding Seatback Handle

If equipped, the front seats can be moved out of the way to make it easier to get in and out of the rear seat.

To fold the seatback, lift the handle (2) on top of the seatback. The seatback will fold forward.

To move the seat forward, press and hold the front of the switch (1) on the outboard side of the upper seatback. To move the seat rearward, press and hold the rear of the switch (1). Release the switch (1) when the seat reaches the desired position.

After entering or exiting the rear seat, return the seatback to the upright position. Lift the seatback and push it rearward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

**⚠ Warning**

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

## Power Seat Adjustment

**High Performance Seat**

To adjust the seat:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.
- If equipped, raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.

To adjust the seatback, see *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *59*.

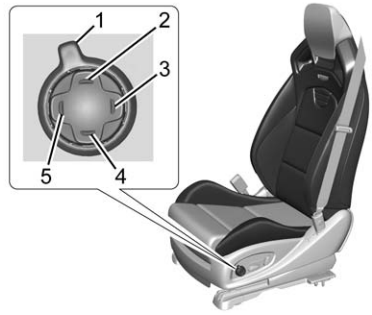
To adjust the lumbar support, see *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

Some vehicles are equipped with a Safety Alert Seat. This feature activates a vibrating pulse alert in the driver seat to help the driver avoid crashes. See *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *266*.

## V-Series Seat Adjustment

**⚠ Warning**

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.




**High Performance Seat**

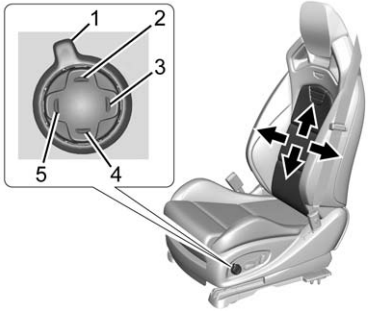
1. Feature Select
2. Up
3. Rearward
4. Down
5. Forward

- Move Feature Select (1) to display seat adjustments on the center stack. Press and release or hold to scroll through features.
- Press Up (2) to make upward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Rearward (3) to make rearward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Down (4) to make downward adjustments of the selected feature.
- Press Forward (5) to make forward adjustments of the selected feature.

### 4–Way Lumbar Support

To adjust lumbar support for a base seat, see *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *59*.

To adjust lumbar support for high performance seats, if equipped:

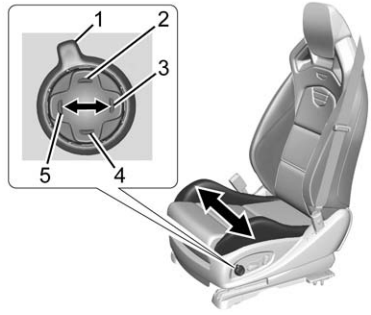



**High Performance Seat**

- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to lumbar support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust lumbar forward or rearward.
- Press Up (2) or Down (4) to adjust lumbar support up or down.

### Cushion Bolster Support

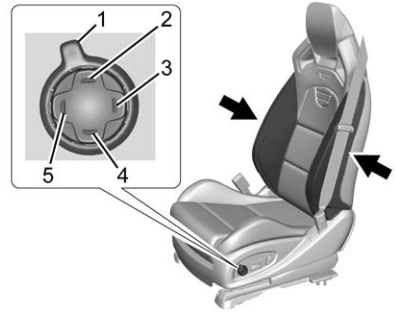
To adjust cushion bolster support, if equipped:




- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to bolster support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust bolster support inward or outward.

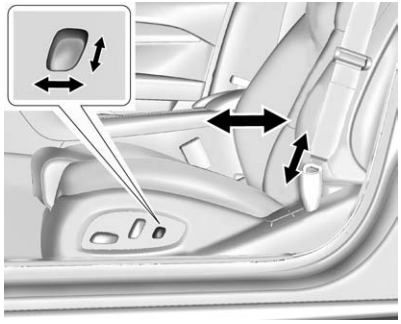
### Back Bolster Support

To adjust back bolster support, if equipped:




- Press and release or hold Feature Select (1) to scroll to upper back support on the center stack.
- Press Forward (5) or Rearward (3) to adjust back support forward or rearward.

## Lumbar Adjustment

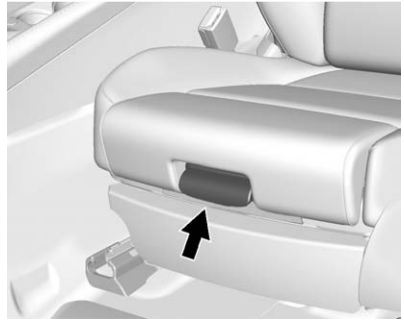


**Base Seat**

To adjust the lumbar and bolster support:

- Press and hold the control forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.
- Press and hold the control up or down to increase or decrease seatback bolster support, if available.

## Thigh Support Adjustment



**Base Seat**

If equipped, pull up on the lever. Then pull or push on the support to lengthen or shorten. Release the lever to lock in place.

## Reclining Seatbacks

**High Performance Seat**

To adjust the seatback:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

**⚠ Warning**

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job.

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.

Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

## Memory Seats

If equipped, the 1, 2, SET, and (Exit) buttons on the driver door are used to manually store and recall memory settings for the driver seat and outside mirrors.

**Storing Memory Positions**

To store positions to the 1 and 2 buttons:

1. The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.
2. Adjust the driver seat and outside mirrors to the desired driving positions.
3. Press and release SET. A beep will sound.
4. Immediately press and hold 1 until two beeps sound.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for a second driver using 2.

To store exit positions and easy exit features to the (Exit) button, repeat Steps 1–4 using to store your positions for getting out of the vehicle.

### Manually Recalling Memory Positions

Press and hold 1, 2, or (Exit) to manually recall the previously stored memory positions. Releasing 1, 2, or before the stored positions are reached stops the recall.

### Automatically Recalling Memory Positions (Auto Memory Recall)

If programmed in the vehicle personalization Menu, the Auto (Automatic) Memory Recall feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored 1 or 2 position when the ignition is changed from off to ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY.

The transmission must be in P (Park), or the parking brake must be set for a manual transmission.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

To stop recall movement, press one of the memory, driver seat, outside mirror, or power tilt and telescoping steering column controls.

RKE transmitters are not labeled with a number. If your memory seat position is stored to 1 or 2 but this position is not automatically recalling, then store your positions to the other button or switch RKE transmitters with the other driver.

### Easy Exit Recall

If programmed on in the vehicle personalization menu, the Easy Exit feature recalls the previously stored (Exit) positions when leaving the vehicle. See "Storing Memory Positions" listed previously. See also *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

Easy Exit recall automatically activates when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.
- If the vehicle's driver has changed, in some vehicles the Driver ID may be displayed for the first few ignition cycles.

RKE transmitters are not labeled with a number. If your memory seat position is stored to 1 or 2, but this position is not automatically recalling, then store your positions to the other button or switch RKE transmitters with the other driver.

### Obstructions

If something has blocked the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction. Then do one of the following:

- If automatically or manually recalling the stored memory position, press and hold the appropriate manual control for two seconds. Try recalling again by pressing the appropriate memory button, then try recalling again by opening the driver door and pressing on the RKE transmitter..
- If recalling the exit position, press and hold the appropriate manual control for the exit

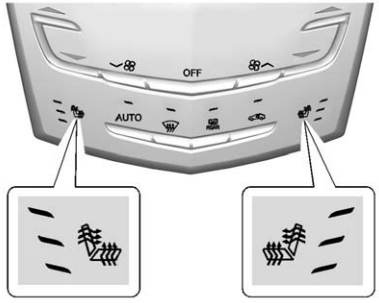
feature not recalling for two seconds. Then try recalling the exit position again.

If the memory position is still not recalling, see your dealer for service.

## Heated Front Seats

**⚠ Warning**

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.




**Uplevel Buttons Shown, Base Buttons Similar**

If available, the buttons are near the climate controls on the center stack. To operate, the ignition must be in ON/RUN/START.

Press / or / to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The indicator lights next to the buttons indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest. If the heated seats are on high, the level may automatically be lowered after approximately 30 minutes.

When this feature is off, the heated seat symbol on the button is white. When the heated seat is turned on, the symbol turns red.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

**Remote Start Auto Heated Seats**

When it is cold outside, the heated seats can be turned on automatically during a remote start. They are canceled when the ignition is turned on. Press the button to use the heated seats after the vehicle is started.

The heated seat indicator lights do not turn on during a remote start.

The temperature performance of an unoccupied seat may be reduced. This is normal.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle

personalization menu. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37* and *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

### Auto Heated Seats

When the vehicle is on, this feature will automatically activate the heated seats at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature.

The active high, medium, low, or off heated seat level will be indicated by the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack. Use the manual heated seat buttons on the center stack to turn auto heated seats off.

If the passenger seat is unoccupied, the auto heated seats feature will not activate that seat. The auto heated seats feature can be programmed to always be enabled when the vehicle is on.

The heated seats will not turn on during a remote start unless they are enabled in the vehicle personalization menu.

See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

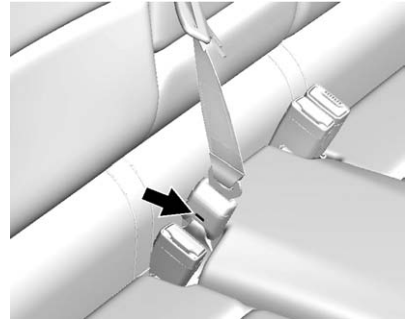
## Rear Seats

### Folding the Seatback

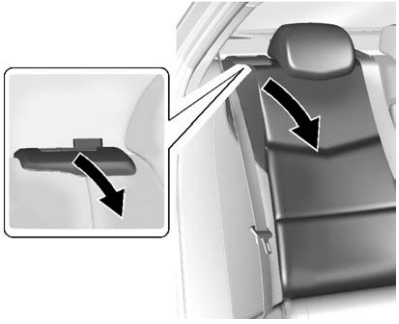
Either side of the seatback can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seatback only when the vehicle is not moving.

| Caution |
| --- |
| Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat. |

To fold the seatback:



1. Disconnect the rear safety belt mini-latch using a key in the slot on the mini-buckle, and let the belt retract.



2. Pull the lever on top of the seatback toward you to unlock the seatback.

   A red tab near the seatback lever raises when the seatback is unlocked.

3. Fold the seatback forward.

   Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to fold the other seatback, if desired.

## Raising the Seatback

**⚠ Warning**

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

**⚠ Warning**

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seatback:

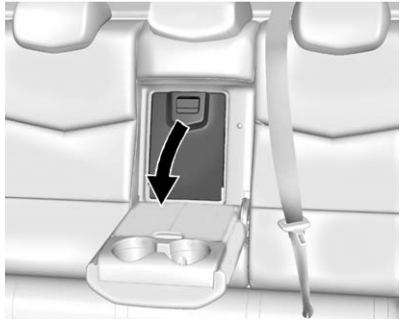
1. Lift the seatback up. Make sure the center safety belt and latch do not get trapped behind the seat. Push the seatback rearward to lock it in place.

   A red tab near the seatback lever retracts when the seatback is locked in place.

2. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Reconnect the center safety belt mini-latch to the mini-buckle. Do not let the belt twist.
4. Pull on the center safety belt to make sure the mini-latch is secure.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

## Rear Seat Pass-Through Door



This vehicle may have a rear seat pass-through door in the center of the rear seatback. Fold down the center armrest and pull the latch to open the door.

# Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow

(Continued)

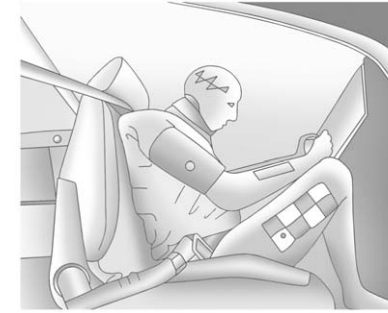
**Warning (Continued)**

passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. See *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *119*.

### Why Safety Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

### Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

**Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?**

**A:** You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

**Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?**

**A:** Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all states and in all Canadian provinces, the law requires wearing safety belts.

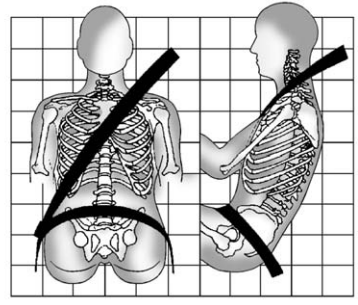
## How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle, see *Older Children* ⇨ *84* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *85*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong

pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.

- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

**⚠ Warning**

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

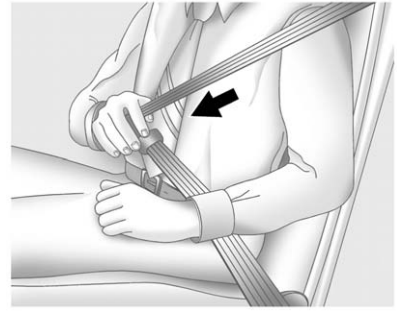
## Lap-Shoulder Belt

All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt.

On sedan models, if you are using a rear center seating position with a detachable safety belt and the safety belt is not attached, see “Folding the Seatback” under *Rear Seats* ⇨ *63* for instructions on reconnecting the safety belt to the mini-buckle.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

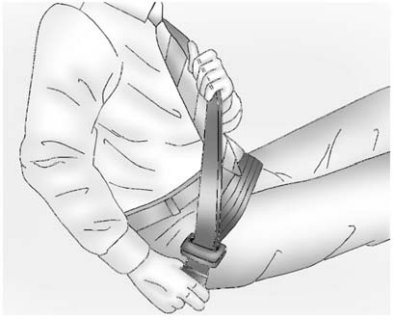
   If the shoulder portion of a passenger belt is pulled out all the way, the child restraint locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again.

If the webbing locks in the latch plate before it reaches the buckle, tilt the latch plate flat to unlock.

3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

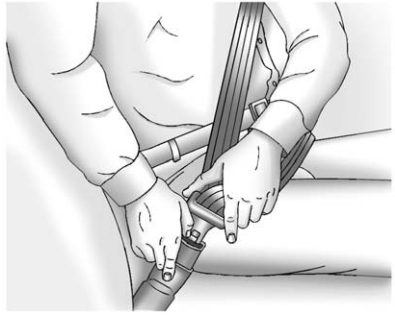
   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender* ⇨ *70*.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

   On sedan models, it may be necessary to pull stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position.

Always stow the safety belt slowly. If the safety belt webbing returns quickly to the stowed position, the retractor may lock and cannot be pulled out. If this happens, pull the safety belt straight out firmly to unlock the webbing, and then

release it. If the webbing is still locked in the retractor, see your dealer.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

## Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System

The vehicle may have the Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System.

Each time the vehicle is started with the front safety belts buckled, the system activates once to tighten the safety belts when the forward vehicle speed exceeds the threshold for activation.

The system also activates during emergency braking and/or sudden driving maneuvers and releases when driving conditions return to normal.

The system turns off whenever Competitive Driving Mode is activated, and will turn back on when Competitive Driving Mode is deactivated. See *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

The system will not activate if the Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control system is not functioning properly. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*. If there is a problem with the Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System, a message displays on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Safety Belt Messages* ⇨ *145*. Other safety belt functions are not affected by the Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System.

## Safety Belt Pretensioners

This vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety belts during the early stages of a moderate to severe frontal, near frontal, or rear crash if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. Safety belt pretensioners can also help tighten the safety belts in a side crash or a rollover event.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and possibly other parts of the safety belt system will need to be replaced. See *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash* ⇨ *71*.

## Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides

Rear safety belt comfort guides may provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the belt away from the neck and head.

Comfort guides are available through your dealer for the rear outboard seating positions. Instructions are included with the guide.

## Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.

A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

## Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

## Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. See *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *119*.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. See *Safety Belt Care* ⇨ *70*.

## Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

## Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

**⚠ Warning**

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle.
A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

# Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A knee airbag for the driver.
- A knee airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger.

Sedan models may have the following airbags:

- Seat-mounted side impact airbags for the second row outboard passengers.

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For knee airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

**⚠ Warning**

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *74*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

**⚠ Warning**

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. The safety belts and the front outboard passenger airbags are most effective when you are sitting well back and upright in the seat with both feet on the floor.

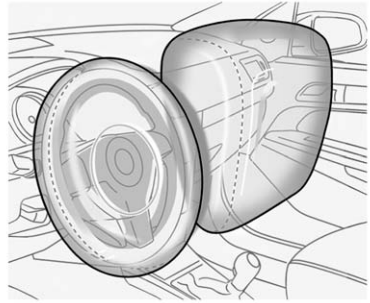
Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

**⚠ Warning**

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children* ⇨ *84* or *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *85*.

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

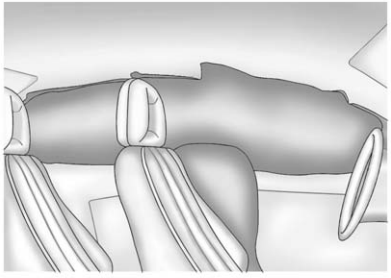
## Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the center of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.

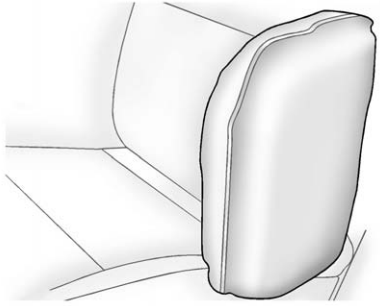
The driver knee airbag is below the steering column. The front outboard passenger knee airbag is below the glove box.



**Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar**

The seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front outboard passenger are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.

The roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers are in the ceiling above the side windows.



**Rear Seat Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar**

On vehicles with second row seat-mounted side impact airbags, they are in the sides of the rear seatback closest to the door.

**⚠ Warning**

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

## When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *71*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to

predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. The vehicle has electronic frontal sensors that help the airbag system determine the severity of the impact. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

In addition, the vehicle has advanced technology frontal airbags. Advanced technology frontal airbags adjust the restraint according to crash severity.

Knee airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal impacts. Knee airbags are not designed to inflate during vehicle rollovers, in rear impacts, or in many side impacts.

The vehicle also has a seat position sensor that enables the sensing system to monitor the position of the front outboard passenger seat. The passenger seat position sensor and the passenger safety belt buckle provide information that is used to determine if the passenger knee airbag should inflate.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near-frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts.
A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes, depending on the location of the impact. In addition, these roof-rail airbags are designed to inflate during a rollover or in a severe frontal impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in rear impacts. Both roof-rail airbags will inflate when either side of the vehicle is struck or if the sensing system predicts that the vehicle is about to roll over on its side, or in a severe frontal impact.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

## What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

For airbag locations, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *73*.

## How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

Rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help contain the head and chest of occupants in the outboard seating positions in the first and second rows. The rollover capable roof-rail airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of full or partial ejection in rollover events, although no system can prevent all such ejections.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. See *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *74*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

## What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. For location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *73*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn on the interior lamps and hazard warning flashers, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. The feature may also activate, without airbag inflation, after an event that exceeds a predetermined threshold. You can lock the doors, and turn off the interior lamps, and turn off the hazard warning flashers by using the controls for those features.

**⚠ Warning**

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* ⇨ *409* and *Event Data Recorders* ⇨ *409*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

## Passenger Sensing System

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position. The passenger airbag status indicator will light on the overhead console when the vehicle is started.

**United States**

**Canada and Mexico**

The words ON and OFF or the symbol for on and off will be visible during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or OFF, or the symbol for on and off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *120*.

The passenger sensing system turns off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, under certain conditions. No other airbag is affected by the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front outboard passenger seat. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag should be allowed to inflate or not.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly secured in a rear seat in a correct child restraint for their weight and size.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag inflates.

**⚠ Warning**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not inflate under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger airbag and knee airbag if:

- The front outboard passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A front outboard passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- There is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbags are off. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *120*.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn on the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front outboard passenger seat.

When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbags to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit as a reminder that the airbags are active.

For some children, including children in child restraints, and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in the vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

**⚠ Warning**

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120* for more information, including important safety information.

### If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag if the system determines that an infant is present in a child restraint. If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle.

3. Remove any additional items from the seat such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers.
4. Reinstall the child restraint following the directions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and refer to *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)* ⇨ *98* or *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)* ⇨ *96*.
5. If, after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, turn the vehicle off. Then slightly recline the vehicle seatback and adjust the seat cushion, if adjustable, to make sure that the vehicle seatback is not pushing the child restraint into the seat cushion.

   Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *54*.
6. Restart the vehicle.

   The passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the airbags for a child in a child restraint depending upon the child's size. It is better to secure a child restraint in a rear seat.

### If the Off Indicator Is Lit for an Adult-Sized Occupant

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front outboard passenger seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. Use the following steps to allow the system to detect that person and enable the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag:

1. Turn the vehicle off.
2. Remove any additional material from the seat, such as blankets, cushions, seat covers, seat heaters, or seat massagers. Also, remove laptops, or other electronic devices.
3. Place the seatback in the fully upright position.
4. Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with legs comfortably extended.
5. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for two to three minutes after the on indicator is lit.

**⚠ Warning**

If the front outboard passenger airbag is turned off for an adult-sized occupant, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect that person in a crash, resulting in an increased risk of serious injury or even death. An adult-sized occupant should not ride in the front outboard passenger seat, if the passenger airbag off indicator is lit.

## Additional Factors Affecting System Operation

Safety belts help keep the passenger in position on the seat during vehicle maneuvers and braking, which helps the passenger sensing system maintain the passenger airbag status. See “Safety Belts” and “Child Restraints” in the Index for additional information about the importance of proper restraint use.

A thick layer of additional material, such as a blanket or cushion, or aftermarket equipment such as seat covers, seat heaters, and seat massagers can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates. We recommend that you not use seat covers or other aftermarket equipment except when approved by GM for your specific vehicle. See *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *82* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

A wet seat can affect the performance of the passenger sensing system. Here is how:

- The passenger sensing system may turn off the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag when liquid is soaked into the seat. If this happens, the off indicator will be lit, and the airbag readiness light on the instrument panel will also be lit.
- Liquid pooled on the seat that has not soaked in may make it more likely that the passenger sensing system will turn on the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag while a child restraint or child occupant is on the seat. If the passenger frontal airbag and passenger knee airbag are turned on, the on indicator will be lit.

If the passenger seat gets wet, dry the seat immediately. If the airbag readiness light is lit, do not install a child restraint or allow anyone to occupy the seat. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120* for important safety information.

The on indicator may be lit if an object, such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device, is put on an unoccupied seat. If this is not desired, remove the object from the seat.

**⚠ Warning**

Stowing of articles under the passenger seat or between the passenger seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

## Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system. To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information* ⇨ *407*.

**⚠ Warning**

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

## Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end, or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly. The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel, instrument panel, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar garnish trim, overhead console, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system for the front outboard passenger position, which includes sensors that are part of the passenger seat. The passenger sensing system may not operate properly if the original seat trim is replaced with non-GM covers, upholstery, or trim; or with GM covers, upholstery, or trim designed for a different vehicle. Any object, such as an aftermarket seat heater or a comfort-enhancing pad or device, installed under or on top of the seat fabric, could also interfere with the operation of the passenger sensing system. This could either prevent proper deployment of the passenger airbag(s) or prevent the passenger sensing system from properly

turning off the passenger airbag(s). See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77*.

The vehicle has rollover roof-rail airbags. See *Different Size Tires and Wheels* ⇨ *349*.

If you have to modify your vehicle because you have a disability and you have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, call Customer Assistance. See *Customer Assistance Offices* ⇨ *400*.

## Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

**Caution**

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. For the location of the airbags, see *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *73*. See your dealer for service.

## Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

**⚠ Warning**

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle.
A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

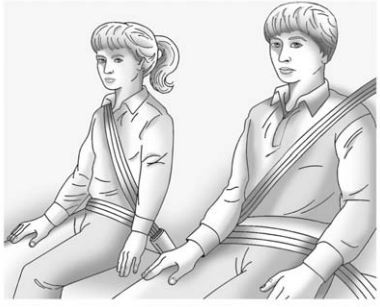
in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120*.

# Child Restraints

## Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle safety belts.

The manufacturer instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, try using the rear safety belt comfort guide, if equipped. See “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *67*. If a comfort guide is not available, or if the shoulder belt still does not rest on the shoulder, then return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

**Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?**

**A:** An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Also see “Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides” under *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *67*.

According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

**⚠ Warning**

Never allow more than one child to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

**⚠ Warning**

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

## Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

**⚠ Warning**

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.

**⚠ Warning**

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.

**Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?**

**A:** Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

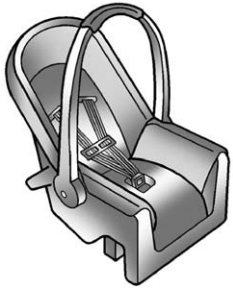
**⚠ Warning**

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury in a crash, infants and toddlers should be secured in a rear-facing child restraint until age two, or until they reach the maximum height and weight limits of their child restraint.

**⚠ Warning**

A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

## Child Restraint Systems



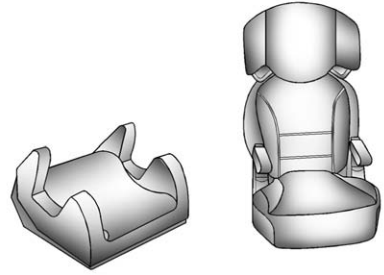
**Rear-Facing Infant Seat**

A rear-facing infant seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

**Forward-Facing Child Seat**

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



**Booster Seats**

A booster seat is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system.
A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

### Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

**⚠ Warning**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90*. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

In some areas of the United States and Canada, Certified Child Passenger Safety Technicians (CPSTs) are available to inspect and demonstrate how to correctly use and install child restraints. In the U.S., refer to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) website to locate the nearest child safety seat inspection station. For CPST availability in Canada, check with Transport Canada or the Provincial Ministry of Transportation office.

### Securing the Child Within the Child Restraint

**⚠ Warning**

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

## Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children aged 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

**⚠ Warning**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front passenger frontal airbag, no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag is off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

the front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77* for additional information.

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

## Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system secures a child restraint during driving or in a crash. LATCH attachments on the child restraint are used to attach the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. The LATCH system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH

attachments. LATCH-compatible rear-facing and forward-facing child seats can be properly installed using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's safety belts. Do not use both the safety belts and the LATCH anchorage system to secure a rear-facing or forward-facing child seat.

Booster seats use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the child in the booster seat. If the manufacturer recommends that the booster seat be secured with the LATCH system, this can be done as long as the booster seat can be positioned properly and there is no interference with the proper positioning of the lap-shoulder belt on the child.

Make sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

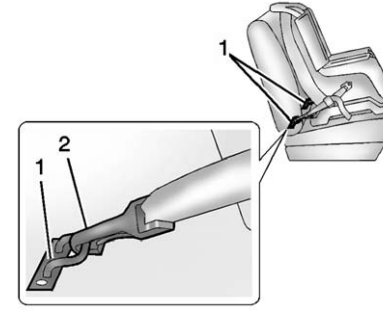
When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be attached using only the top tether.

The LATCH anchorage system can be used until the combined weight of the child plus the child restraint is 29.5 kg (65 lbs). Use the safety belt alone instead of the LATCH anchorage system once the combined weight is more than 29.5 kg (65 lbs).

The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

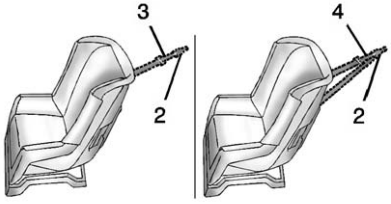
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments. In this case, the safety belt must be used (with top tether where available) to secure the child restraint. See *Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)* ⇨ *98* or *Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)* ⇨ *96*.

## Lower Anchors




Lower anchors (1) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (2).

## Top Tether Anchor

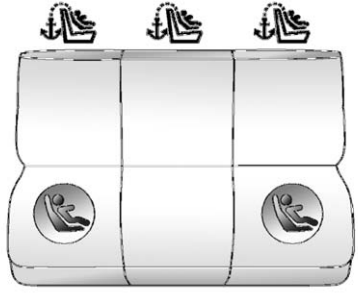



A top tether (3, 4) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (3) or a dual tether (4). Either will have a single attachment (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints with top tethers are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

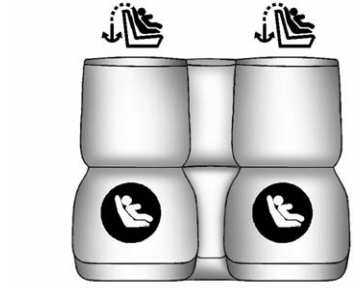
## Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



**Rear Seat (Sedan)**

**:** Seating positions with top tether anchors.

**:** Seating positions with two lower anchors.



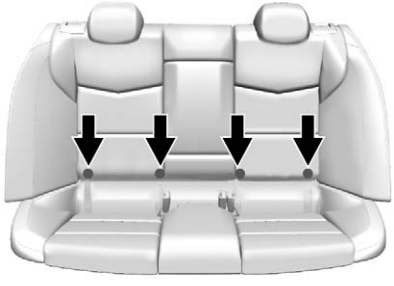
**Rear Seat (Coupe)**

**:** Seating positions with top tether anchors.

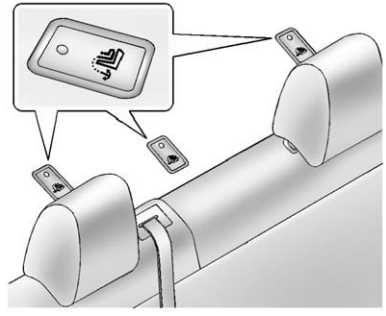
**:** Seating positions with two lower anchors.

To assist in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.

To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is on the cover.



The outboard lower anchors are behind the vertical openings in the seat trim.



**Sedan Shown, Coupe Similar**

The top tether anchors are behind the rear seat, on the filler panel. Open the covers to access the anchors. Be sure to use an anchor on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *89* for additional information.

## Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

**⚠ Warning**

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors or with the safety belt, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle safety belts to secure the restraint,

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

**⚠ Warning**

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured.

**⚠ Warning**

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck. The shoulder belt can tighten but

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

cannot be loosened if it is locked. The shoulder belt locks when it is pulled all the way out of the retractor. It unlocks when the shoulder belt is allowed to go all the way back into the retractor, but it cannot do this if it is wrapped around a child's neck. If the shoulder belt is locked and tightened around a child's neck, the only way to loosen the belt is to cut it.

Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, and tighten the belt behind the child restraint after the child restraint has been installed.

**Caution**

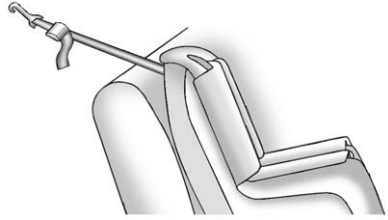
Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

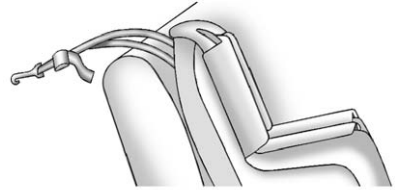
If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat, see *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *89*.

This system is designed to make the installation of child restraints easier. When using lower anchors, do not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead, use the vehicle's anchors and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether.

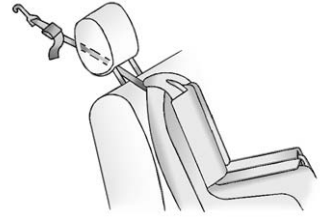
1. Attach and tighten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and tighten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. Open the top tether anchor cover to expose the anchor.
   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, route the tether over the seatback.

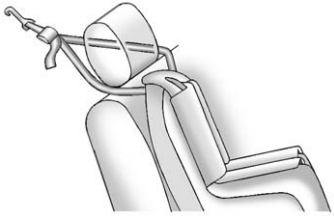


If the position you are using does not have a headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether over the seatback.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest

or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.



If the position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and around the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the LATCH path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. There should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement for proper installation.

## Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

**⚠ Warning**

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

## Securing Child Restraints (Rear Seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if

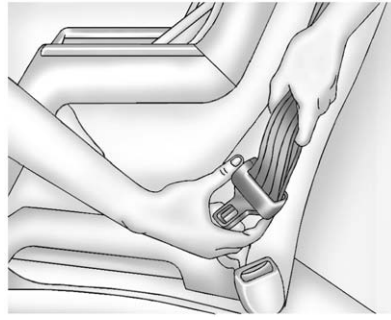
the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

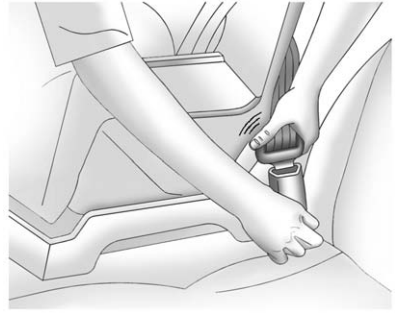
If the child restraint or vehicle seat position does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ 89.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



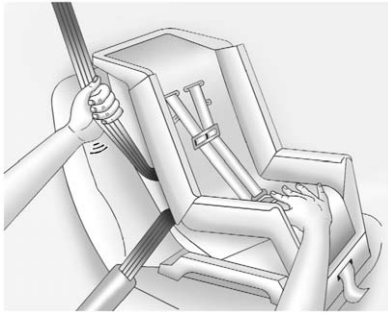
Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt, if needed.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. If the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, check if the correct buckle is being used.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

4. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 4 and 5.

6. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. See *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90* for more information.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

## Securing Child Restraints (Front Passenger Seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *89*.

In addition, the vehicle has a passenger sensing system which is designed to turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag under certain conditions. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *120*.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

**⚠ Warning**

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

be very close to the inflating airbag. A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger frontal airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position.

Even if the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger airbag(s), no system is fail-safe. No one can guarantee that an airbag will not inflate under some unusual circumstance, even though the airbag(s) are off.

Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat, even if the airbag(s) are off. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77* for additional information.

If the child restraint uses a top tether, see *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *90* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top tether, and that the tether be attached.

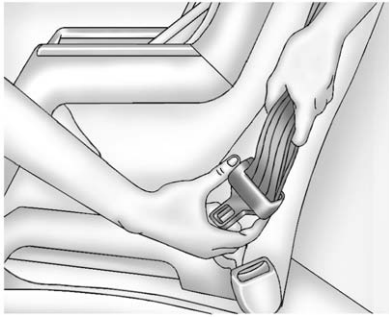
When using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position, follow the instructions that came with the child restraint and the following instructions:

1. Move the seat rearward as far back as it will go and raise the seat upward as far up as it will go, before securing the forward-facing child restraint.

   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag, the off indicator on the passenger airbag status indicator should light and stay lit when you start the vehicle. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator* ⇨ *120*.

2. Put the child restraint on the seat.

3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.

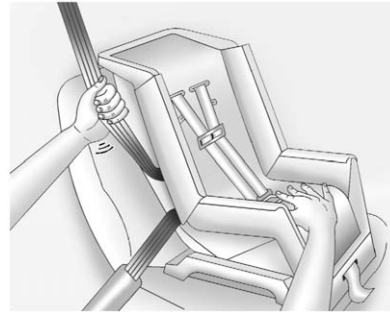


Tilt the latch plate to adjust the belt if needed.

4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

5. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock. When the retractor lock is set, the belt can be tightened but not pulled out of the retractor.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt, and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is locked. If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.

7. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, grasp the child restraint at the safety belt path and attempt to move it side to side and back and forth. When the child restraint is properly installed, there should be no more than 2.5 cm (1 in) of movement.

If the airbags are off, the off indicator in the passenger airbag status indicator will come on and stay on when the vehicle is started.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, see “If the On Indicator Is Lit for a Child Restraint” under *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77*.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position.

# Storage

**Storage Compartments**
Storage Compartments . . . . . 102
Instrument Panel Storage . . . . 102
Glove Box . . . . . 103
Armrest Storage . . . . . 103

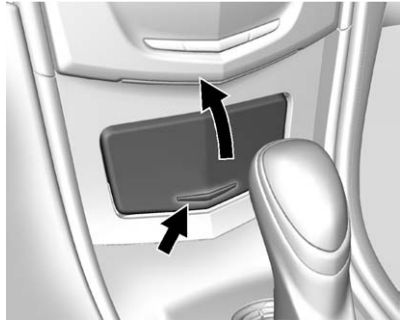
**Additional Storage Features**
Cargo Tie-Downs . . . . . 103

## Storage Compartments

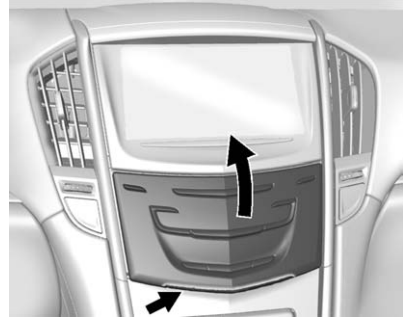
**⚠ Warning**

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

### Instrument Panel Storage



To access, press on the cover and release. There is an accessory power outlet inside. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *110*.



If equipped with storage behind the climate control system, touch the bottom of the climate control system panel until the door automatically starts to open. There is a USB port inside. See *USB Port* ⇨ *181*.

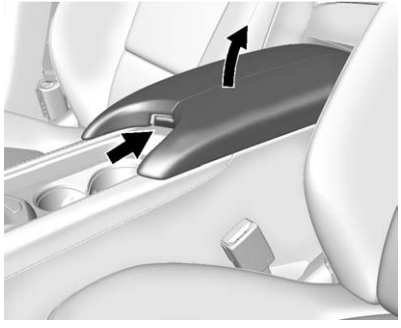
Keep the storage area door closed while driving.

Touch the bottom of the climate control system panel again until the door automatically starts to close.

## Glove Box

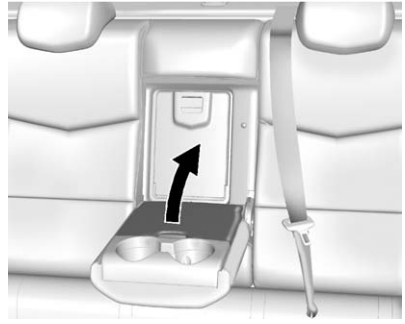
To open the glove box, lift up on the lever. Use the key to lock and unlock it. The glove box may have a compact disc player inside.

## Armrest Storage



**Front Armrest**

Press the button and lift to access the storage area. There is a USB port, SD card reader, and an auxiliary jack inside. See *USB Port* ⇨ *181*, *SD Card Reader* ⇨ *184*, and *Auxiliary Jack* ⇨ *184*.

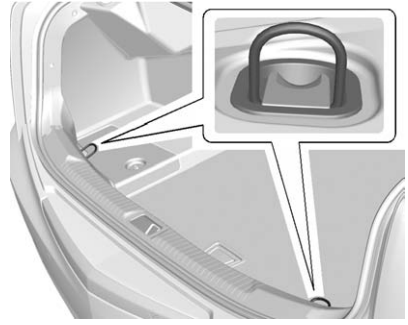


**Rear Armrest**

Pull the armrest down and lift the cover to access the storage area.

# Additional Storage Features

## Cargo Tie-Downs



The cargo tie-downs can be used to secure small loads inside the trunk.

# Instruments and Controls

## Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment . . . 105
Steering Wheel Controls . . . . . 106
Heated Steering Wheel . . . . . 106
Horn . . . . . 107
Windshield Wiper/Washer . . . . 107
Headlamp Washer . . . . . 108
Compass . . . . . 109
Clock (Base Radio) . . . . . 109
Clock (Uplevel Radio) . . . . . 109
Power Outlets . . . . . 110
Wireless Charging . . . . . 111

## Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators . . . . . 113
Instrument Cluster . . . . . 114
Speedometer . . . . . 117
Odometer . . . . . 117
Trip Odometer . . . . . 117
Tachometer . . . . . 117
Fuel Gauge . . . . . 118
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge . . . . . 118
Safety Belt Reminders . . . . . 119
Airbag Readiness Light . . . . . 120
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator . . . . . 120
Charging System Light . . . . . 121
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light) . . . . . 121
Brake System Warning Light . . . . . 123
Parking Brake Light . . . . . 124
Service Electric Parking Brake Light . . . . . 124
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light . . . . . 124
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light . . . . . 125
Vehicle Ahead Indicator . . . . . 125
Traction Off Light . . . . . 125
StabiliTrak® OFF Light . . . . . 126
Traction Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light . . . . . 126
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light . . . . . 126
Tire Pressure Light . . . . . 127
Engine Oil Pressure Light . . . . 127
Low Fuel Warning Light . . . . . 128
Security Light . . . . . 128
High-Beam On Light . . . . . 128
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light . . . . . 129
Lamps On Reminder . . . . . 129
Cruise Control Light . . . . . 129

## Information Displays

Driver Information Center (DIC) . . . . . 130
Head-Up Display (HUD) . . . . . 132

## Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages . . . . . 136
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages . . . . . 136
Brake System Messages . . . . . 136
Compass Messages . . . . . 137
Cruise Control Messages . . . . . 137
Door Ajar Messages . . . . . 138
Engine Cooling System Messages . . . . . 138
Engine Oil Messages . . . . . 138
Engine Power Messages . . . . . 139
Fuel System Messages . . . . . 139
Key and Lock Messages . . . . . 139
Lamp Messages . . . . . 140
Object Detection System Messages . . . . . 140
Ride Control System Messages . . . . . 143
Airbag System Messages . . . . 145
Safety Belt Messages . . . . . 145
Security Messages . . . . . 145
Service Vehicle Messages . . . . 146
Starting the Vehicle Messages . . . . . 146
Tire Messages . . . . . 146

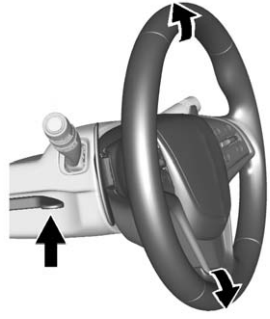
Transmission Messages . . . . . 147
Vehicle Reminder Messages . . . . . 148
Vehicle Speed Messages . . . . . 148
Washer Fluid Messages . . . . . 148

**Vehicle Personalization**
Vehicle Personalization . . . . . 148

**Universal Remote System**
Universal Remote System . . . . 156
Universal Remote System Programming . . . . . 156
Universal Remote System Operation . . . . . 159

# Controls

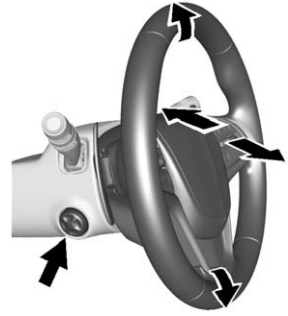
## Steering Wheel Adjustment



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

**Power Tilt and Telescoping Wheel**



If equipped, the control is on the left side of the steering column.

- Push the control up or down to tilt the steering wheel up or down.
- Push the control forward or rearward to move the steering wheel toward the front or rear of the vehicle.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

To set the power tilt wheel memory position, see *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60*.

## Steering Wheel Controls

If equipped with audio steering wheel controls, some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel.

**:** Press to talk or interact with OnStar® and Bluetooth®. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *411* and "Bluetooth" in the infotainment manual.

**:** Press to decline an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

**< or > :** Press the five-way control to the left or right to go to the previous or next area in the display or to the previous or next menu.

**∧ or ∨ :** Press the five-way control up or down to go up or down in a list. Press to go up or down a page.

**SEL :** Press to select a highlighted menu option.

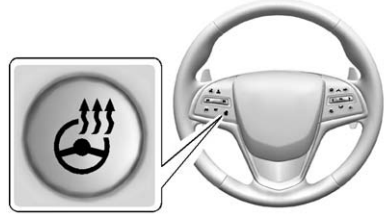
**⊼ or ⊽ :** Press or press and hold to go to the next or previous favorite or seek a station when listening to the radio.

Press or press and hold to go to the next or previous track when listening to a media source.

These buttons can be configured. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

**+ or − :** Press to increase or decrease the volume.

## Heated Steering Wheel



**(Heated Steering Wheel) :** If equipped, press to turn the heated steering wheel on or off. A light next to the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to be fully heated.

## Horn

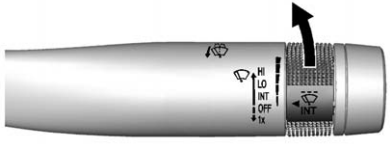
Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

## Windshield Wiper/Washer

With the ignition in ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START, move the windshield wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

**HI :** Use for fast wipes.

**LO :** Use for slow wipes.




**INT (Intermittent Wipes) :** Move the lever up to INT for intermittent wipes, then turn the INT band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

If the windshield wipers are in use for about six seconds while driving, the exterior lamps come on automatically if the exterior lamp controls is in AUTO. See “Lights On with Wipers” under *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *163*.

**OFF :** Use to turn the wipers off.

**1X (Mist) :** For a single wipe, briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades and windshield before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *319*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wiper motor.

**Wiper Parking**

If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windshield wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windshield.

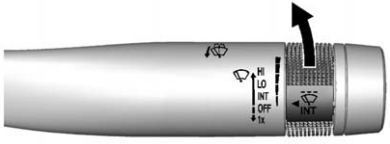
If the ignition is put in OFF while the wipers are performing wipes due to windshield washing, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windshield.

### Rainsense™

If equipped with Rainsense, a sensor near the top center of the windshield detects the amount of water on the windshield and controls the frequency of the windshield wiper. To turn this feature on or off, see “Rain Sense Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

**INT (Rainsense Wipe Sensitivity Control) :** When enabled, move the windshield wiper lever to INT. Turn the INT band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.




- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windshield wiper lever out of the INT position to deactivate Rainsense.

**Wiper Arm Assembly Protection**

When using an automatic car wash, move the windshield wiper lever to OFF. This disables the automatic Rainsense windshield wipers.

With Rainsense, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windshield.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

**(Windshield Washer) :** Pull the windshield wiper lever toward you to spray windshield washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached. When the windshield wiper lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windshield washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313* for information on filling the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

**⚠ Warning**

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

## Headlamp Washer

If equipped with headlamp washers, they are located to the side of the headlamps.

The headlamps must be on in order to use the headlamp washers. If the headlamps are not on, only the windshield will be washed.

Pull the wiper lever toward you and hold briefly to activate. The headlamp washers will spray once, pause, and spray again. The headlamp washers will spray again after five windshield wash cycles.

To refill the windshield washer fluid, see *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.

## Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Center (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, StabiliTrak®, and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain number of miles or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. When the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again. See *Compass Messages* ⇨ *137* for the messages that may be displayed for the compass.

## Clock (Base Radio)

### Setting the Time

To set the time:

1. Select Settings from the Home Page and select Set Time.
2. Turn the MENU knob to increase or decrease the hour.
3. Press the MENU knob to go to the next option. Press < BACK to go to the last menu and save the changes.

### Auto Set

In the Set Time view, touch the area just above the chrome bar and below the Auto Set screen button to turn on/off the Auto Time adjust capability.

## Clock (Uplevel Radio)

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See “Home Page” in the infotainment manual for information about how to use the menu system.

### Setting the Clock

#### Time

To set the time:

1. From the Home Page, touch the SETTINGS screen button, then touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Set Time, then touch + or − to increase or decrease hours or minutes, and change AM or PM.
3. Touch 12-24 Hr for a 12 or 24 hour clock.
4. Touch ❮ Back to go back to the previous menu.

#### Date

To set the date:

1. Touch the SETTINGS screen button, then touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Set Date, then touch + or − to increase or decrease month, day, or year.
3. Touch ❮ Back to go back to the previous menu.

**Auto Set**

When on, the time and date will automatically update.

To set auto set:

1. Touch the SETTINGS screen button, then touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Set Time or Set Date.
3. Touch Auto Set, then select On-Cell Network or Off-Manual to manually set the time and date.
4. Touch ❮ Back to go back to the previous menu.

If auto set is on, the time displayed on the clock may not update immediately when driving into a new time zone.

**Clock Display**

When on, the digital clock will display on the infotainment screen.

To set the clock display:

1. Touch the SETTINGS screen button, then touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Clock Display, then select Off or On.
3. Touch ❮ Back to go back to the previous menu.

## Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or MP3 player.

The vehicle has two accessory power outlets:

- Inside the front storage bin below the climate control system.
- On the rear of the center floor console.

Lift the cover to access the accessory power outlet.

Certain electrical accessories may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload a vehicle circuit breaker or adapter fuse. If overloaded, the circuit breaker will reset after all devices are disconnected or if Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is turned off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*. Wait one minute to allow the circuit breaker to reset before reconnecting devices or turning RAP back on. If the problem continues, the issue could be within your device. Try another known good device to make sure the circuit breaker is operating properly. If this does not resolve your problem, see your dealer.

It is possible to replace the factory power outlet with a cigar lighter receptacle, if desired. This requires the factory installed circuit breaker to be replaced with a standard minifuse by the dealer. A minifuse will not reset and will have to be replace if blown.

| Caution |
| --- |
| Failure to replace the circuit breaker with the minifuse could overheat the cigar lighter and damage the vehicle. |

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *289*.

| Caution |
| --- |
| Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords. |

Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 amps rating.

### Power Outlet 110/120 Volt Alternating Current

If equipped, this power outlet is on the rear of the center floor console. It can be used to plug in electrical equipment that uses a maximum limit of 150 watts.

An indicator light on the outlet turns on to show it is in use. The light comes on when the ignition is in ON/RUN/START, equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light does not come on when the ignition is in LOCK/OFF or if the equipment is not fully seated into the outlet.

If equipment is connected using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off. To reset the circuit, unplug the item and plug it back in or turn the Retained Accessory Power (RAP) off and then back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*. The power restarts when equipment using 150 watts or less is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following and may not work properly, if this equipment is plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage such as: compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools.
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply such as: microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc.
- Medical equipment.

## Wireless Charging

The vehicle may have wireless charging in the storage behind the climate control system. See *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *102*. The system wirelessly charges one PMA or Qi compatible mobile device.

To check for phone or other device compatibility:

- In the U.S., see my.cadillac.com/learn.
- In Canada, see gmtotalconnect.ca.

**⚠ Warning**

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The vehicle must be in ON/RUN/START, ACC/ACCESSORY, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP). The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

The operating temperature is −20 °C (−4 °F) to 60 °C (140 °F) for the charging system and 0 °C (32 °F) to 35 °C (95 °F) for the phone.

**⚠ Warning**

Remove all metal objects from the charging pad before charging your mobile device. Metal objects, such as coins, keys, rings, or paper clips, between the phone and charging pad will become very hot. On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect a metal object, and the object gets wedged between the phone and charger, remove the phone and allow the metallic object to cool before removing it from the charging pad, to prevent burns.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Open the climate control system panel.

2. Remove all objects from the charging pad. The system may not charge if there are any objects on the charging pad.
3. Place the mobile device face up on the symbol on the charging pad.
4. The will display on the on the infotainment screen. This indicates that the mobile device is properly positioned and charging. If a phone is placed on the charging pad and does not display, remove the phone from the pad, and wait three seconds before placing/aligning the phone on the pad again.

Keep the storage door closed while driving.

# Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

## Instrument Cluster

**English with Auto Stop Shown, Metric Similar**

**English V-Series Shown, Metric Similar**

## Cluster Application Displays

The cluster has three interactive display zones.

Use the five-way control on the right steering wheel control to move between the different display zones and scroll through the different displays.

The left and right zones display Driver Information Center (DIC) information. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

The center zone displays application information for the digital speedometer, navigation, audio, phone, efficiency gauge, best fuel economy, or options.

### Digital Speedometer

While the digital speedometer is displayed, press SEL to select speed limit information.

### Navigation

If there is no active route, a compass will be displayed. If there is an active route, press SEL to end route guidance or turn the voice prompts on or off.

### Audio

While the Audio application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Audio menu. In the Audio menu search for music, select from favorites, or change the audio source.

### Phone

While the Phone application page is displayed, press SEL to enter the Phone menu. In the Phone menu, if there is no active phone call, view recent calls, select from favorites, or scroll through contacts. If there is an active call, mute the phone or switch to handset operation.

### Driver Efficiency Gauge

If equipped, this gauge is a guide to driving in an efficient manner by keeping the ball green and in the center of the gauge. Hard braking or acceleration causes the ball to travel away from the center of the gauge.

### Best Fuel Economy

This page displays average fuel economy, the best fuel economy over the selected distance, and a bar graph showing instantaneous fuel economy.

### Options

Press SEL while the Options application page is displayed to enter the Options menu.

**Units :** Press SEL while Units is highlighted to enter the Units menu. Choose English or metric units by pressing SEL while the desired item is highlighted. A checkmark will be displayed next to the selected item.

**Info Pages :** Press SEL while Info Pages is highlighted to select the items to be displayed in the DIC information displays. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

**Fav Button Options :** Press SEL while Fav Button Options is highlighted to select between FAV Primary and SEEK Primary. This selection allows for configuration of the △ and ▽ steering wheel controls. When FAV Primary is

selected, pressing △ and ▽ will go to the next or previous favorite and pressing and holding △ and ▽ will seek. When SEEK Primary is selected, pressing △ and ▽ will seek and pressing and holding △ and ▽ will go to the next or previous favorite.

**Tire Loading (If Equipped) :** Press SEL while Tire Loading is highlighted to change the tire loading setting. Choose Light (for comfort pressure up to three people), Eco (for Eco pressure up to three people), or Max (for full loading) by pressing SEL while the desired item is highlighted.

**Open Source Software :** Press SEL while Open Source Software is highlighted to display open source software information.

## Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

## Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven, in either kilometers or miles.

## Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

## Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

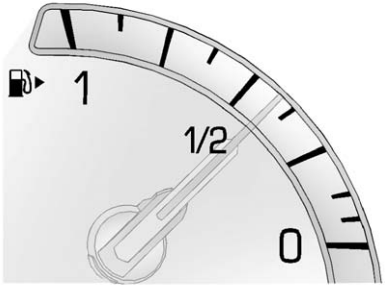
For vehicles with the Stop/Start system, when the ignition is in ON/RUN, the tachometer indicates the vehicle status. When pointing to AUTO STOP, the engine is off but the vehicle is on and can move. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

When the engine is on, the tachometer will indicate the engine's revolutions per minute (rpm). The tachometer may vary by several hundred rpm's, during auto stop mode, when the engine is shutting off and restarting.

A slight bump may be felt when the transmission is determining the most fuel efficient operating range.

| Caution |
| --- |
| If the engine is operated with the rpm's in the warning area at the high end of the tachometer, the vehicle could be damaged, and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the rpm's in the warning area. |

## Fuel Gauge




When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the tank.

There is an arrow near the fuel gauge pointing to the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

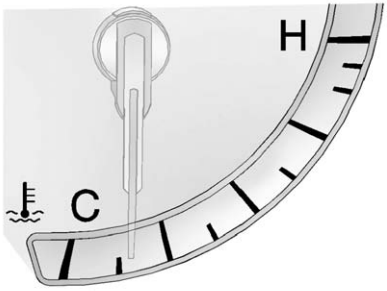
When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. There still is a little fuel left, but the vehicle should be refueled soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. None of these show a problem with the fuel gauge:

- At the service station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the gauge indicated. For example, the gauge may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gauge moves a little while turning a corner or speeding up.
- The gauge takes a few seconds to stabilize after the ignition is turned on, and goes back to empty when the ignition is turned off.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

**Metric**




**English**

This gauge measures the temperature of the vehicle's engine.

While driving under normal operating conditions, if the needle moves into the shaded area, the engine is too hot. Pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible.

## Safety Belt Reminders

### Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver safety belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

### Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a passenger safety belt reminder light near the passenger airbag status indicator. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77*.

When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their safety belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle continues several times if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

## Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the passenger sensing system, the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *71*.

The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

**⚠ Warning**

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Center (DIC) message may also come on. See *Airbag System Messages* ⇨ *145*.

## Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

The vehicle has a passenger sensing system. See *Passenger Sensing System* ⇨ *77* for important safety information. The passenger airbag status indicator is in the overhead console.

**United States**

**Canada and Mexico**

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the front

outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag are allowed to inflate.

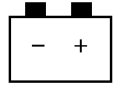
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag and knee airbag.

If, after several seconds, both status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

**⚠ Warning**

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *120* for more information, including important safety information.

## Charging System Light




The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. It should go out when the engine is started.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, or is flashing, the Driver Information Center (DIC) also displays a message.

See *Battery Voltage and Charging Messages* ⇨ *136*.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

## Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)

This light is part of the vehicle's emission control on-board diagnostic system. If this light is on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service. The light should come on to show that it is working when the ignition is in Service Only Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *230*.

Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

**Caution**

If the vehicle is driven continually with this light on, the emission control system may not work as well, the fuel economy may be lower, and the vehicle may not run smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Caution**

Modifications to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system, or the use of replacement tires that do not meet the original tire specifications, can cause this light to come on. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by the

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

vehicle warranty. This could also affect the vehicle's ability to pass an Emissions Inspection/ Maintenance test. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *291*.

**If the light is flashing :** A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill grades. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the vehicle off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

**If the light is on steady :** A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

Check the following:

- For vehicles without the capless fuel system, a loose or missing fuel cap may cause the light to come on. See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *280*. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed may turn the light off.
- For vehicles with the capless fuel system, if fuel has been added to the vehicle using the capless funnel adapter, make sure that it has been removed. See "Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can" under *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *280*. The diagnostic system can detect if the adapter has been left installed in the vehicle, allowing fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere.

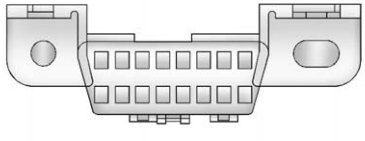
A few driving trips with the adapter removed may turn off the light.

- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off. See *Fuel* ⇨ *279*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

### Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

If the vehicle requires an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test, the test equipment will likely connect to the vehicle's Data Link Connector (DLC).



The DLC is under the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel. Connecting devices that are not used to perform an Emissions Inspection/Maintenance test or to service the vehicle may affect vehicle operation See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *289*. See your dealer if assistance is needed.

The vehicle may not pass inspection if:

- The light is on when the engine is running.
- The light does not come on when the ignition is in Service Only Mode.
- Critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed. If this happens, the vehicle would not be ready for inspection and might require several days of routine driving before the system is ready for inspection. This can happen if the 12-volt battery has recently been replaced or run down, or if the vehicle has been recently serviced.

See your dealer if the vehicle will not pass or cannot be made ready for the test.

## Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.

BRAKE

**Metric** **English**

This light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a brake problem.

**⚠ Warning**

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

## Parking Brake Light

**Metric**

PARK

**English**

This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Brake System Messages* ⇨ *136*.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

## Service Electric Parking Brake Light

This light should come on briefly when starting the vehicle. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. See the information for the Electric Parking Brake under *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*. If a message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC), see *Brake System Messages* ⇨ *136*.

## Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as it is safely possible and turn off the vehicle. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the ABS light stays on,

or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the ABS light is the only light on, the vehicle has regular brakes, but the antilock brakes are not functioning.

If both the ABS and the brake system warning light are on, the vehicle's antilock brakes are not functioning and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See your dealer for service.

See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *123* and *Brake System Messages* ⇨ *136*.

## Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

If available, this light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced.

This light is green if LKA is available to assist.

LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction. The LKA light will turn amber.

This light is amber and flashes as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *277*.

## Vehicle Ahead Indicator

If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead and amber when you are following a vehicle ahead much too closely.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270*.

## Traction Off Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off by pressing and releasing the TCS/StabiliTrak button.

This light and the StabiliTrak OFF light come on when StabiliTrak is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel spin is not limited. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

## StabiliTrak® OFF Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the StabiliTrak system is turned off. If StabiliTrak is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

This light may also come on when a Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. See "Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)" under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

If the StabiliTrak and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the StabiliTrak systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

## Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® Light

This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the StabiliTrak system have been disabled. A DIC message may display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the StabiliTrak system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

## Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light goes off.

**Caution**

The engine coolant temperature warning light indicates that the vehicle has overheated. Driving with this light on can damage the engine and it may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *312*.

The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on when the engine has overheated.

If this happens, pull over and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *312*.

## Tire Pressure Light

For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

### When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

A Driver Information Center (DIC) tire pressure message may also display. See *Tire Messages* ⇨ *146*. Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

### When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

## Engine Oil Pressure Light

**Caution**

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

## Low Fuel Warning Light

This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

## Security Light

The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobilizer Operation* ⇨ *46*.

## High-Beam On Light

This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *162*.

### IntelliBeam® Light

This light comes on when the IntelliBeam system, if equipped, is enabled.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *160*.

## Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light

This light should come on briefly as the vehicle is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on solid when there is a problem with the AFL system. It flashes when the system is switching between lighting modes. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *164*.

## Lamps On Reminder

This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *160*.

## Cruise Control Light

The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready, and turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256*.

## Adaptive Cruise Control Light

This light in the Driver Information Center (DIC) comes on when the Adaptive Cruise Control (if equipped) is active. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258*.

# Information Displays

## Driver Information Center (DIC)

The DIC displays are shown in the left and right interactive display zones on the instrument cluster. The displays show the status of many vehicle systems. The controls for the DIC are on the right steering wheel control.

**∧ or ∨ :** Press to move up or down in a list.

**< or > :** Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster. Press < to go back to the previous menu.

**SEL (Select) :** Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

### DIC Information Display Options

The information displays on the DIC can be turned on or off through the Options menu.

1. Press SEL while viewing the Options page in the center display zone on the cluster.
2. Scroll to Info Pages and press SEL.
3. Press ∧ or ∨ to move through the list of possible information displays.
4. Press SEL while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a checkmark will appear next to it.

### DIC Information Displays

The following is the list of all possible DIC information displays. Some of the information displays may not be available for your particular vehicle.

**Speed :** Shows the vehicle speed in either kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph).

**Trip 1 and Trip 2 :** Shows the current distance traveled, in either kilometers (km) or miles (mi), since the trip odometer was last reset. The trip odometer can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Fuel Range :** Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refueling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

**Average Fuel Economy :** Shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km (mpg) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy that the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. The Average Fuel Economy can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Instantaneous Fuel Economy :** Shows the current fuel economy in either liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) or miles per gallon (mpg). This number reflects only the approximate fuel economy that the vehicle has right now and changes frequently as driving conditions change.

**Average Speed :** Shows the average speed of the vehicle in kilometers per hour (km/h) or miles per hour (mph). This average is calculated based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset of this value. The average speed can be reset by pressing and holding SEL while this display is active.

**Timer :** This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press SEL while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press SEL briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold SEL while this display is active.

**Compass :** Shows the direction the vehicle is driving.

**Turn Arrow :** Shows the next maneuver when using route guidance.

**Travel Time :** Shows the estimated time duration remaining for the current route.

**Estimated Time to Arrival :** Shows the approximate time of arrival to your destination when using route guidance.

**Speed Limit :** Shows the current speed limit on vehicles with the navigation system. The information for this page comes from a roadway database.

**Speed Warning :** Allows the driver to set a speed that they do not want to exceed. To set the Speed Warning, press SEL when Speed Warning is displayed. Press ∧ or ∨ to adjust the value. This feature can be turned off by pressing and holding SEL while viewing this page. If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed and a chime may sound.

**Cruise Set Speed :** Shows the speed the cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC, if equipped) is set to.

**Gap Setting :** When ACC (if equipped) has been engaged, this page shows the current gap setting along with the vehicle ahead telltale.

**Performance Timer (If Equipped) :** On some vehicles, the last performance time will be displayed. Press SEL to enter the Performance Timer Menu. In this

menu, timer start and end speeds can be changed and the timer can be reset. Press and hold SEL while viewing the Performance Timer to clear the value and also stop the timer.

**Battery Voltage :** Shows the current battery voltage.

**Oil Life :** Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
If REMAINING OIL LIFE 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ *138*. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*. In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not to reset the Oil Life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press and hold SEL for several seconds while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*.

**Tire Pressure :** Shows the approximate pressures of all four tires. Tire pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or in pounds per square inch (psi). If the pressure is low, the value for that tire is shown in amber. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *341* and *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

**Vehicle Odometer :** Shows the odometer.

**Blank Page :** The Blank Page display allows for no information to be displayed in the DIC display zone(s).

## Head-Up Display (HUD)

**⚠ Warning**

If the HUD image is too bright or too high in your field of view, it may take you more time to see things you need to see when it is dark outside. Be sure to keep the HUD image dim and placed low in your field of view.

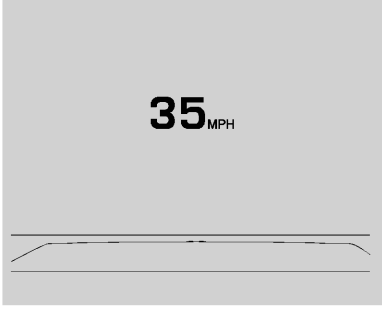
If equipped with HUD, some information concerning the operation of the vehicle is projected onto the windshield. The information is projected through the HUD lens on the driver side of the instrument panel and focused out toward the front of the vehicle.

**Caution**

If you try to use the HUD image as a parking aid, you may misjudge the distance and damage your vehicle. Do not use the HUD image as a parking aid.

The HUD information can be displayed in various languages. The speedometer reading and other numerical values can be displayed in either English or metric units.

The language selection is changed through the radio and the units of measurement is changed through the instrument cluster. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148* and “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

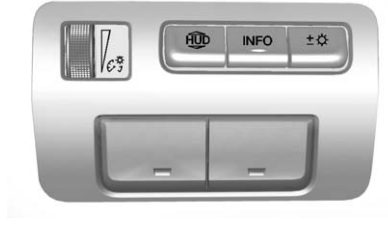



**HUD Display on the Vehicle Windshield**

The HUD may display some of the following vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts:

- Speed
- Tachometer
- Audio
- Phone
- Navigation
- Collision Alert
- Cruise Control
- Lane Departure
- Low Fuel
- Transmission Gear

Some vehicle messages or alerts displayed in the HUD may be cleared by using the steering wheel controls. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *136*.




The HUD control is to the left of the steering wheel.

To adjust the HUD image:

1. Adjust the driver seat to a comfortable position.
2. Start the engine.
3. Use the following settings to adjust the HUD.

HUD **(Image Adjustment) :** Press down or lift up to center the HUD image. The HUD image can only be adjusted up and down, not side to side.

INFO **(Display View) :** Press to select the display view. Each press will change the display view.

±☼ **(Image Brightness) :** Lift up and hold to brighten the display. Press down and hold to dim the display. Hold down to turn the display off.

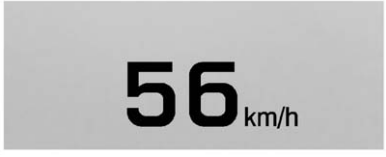
The HUD image will automatically dim and brighten to compensate for outside lighting. The HUD brightness control can also be adjusted as needed.

The HUD image can temporarily light up depending on the angle and position of sunlight on the HUD display. This is normal.

Polarized sunglasses could make the HUD image harder to see.

**HUD Views**

There are four views in the HUD. Some vehicle information and vehicle messages or alerts may be displayed in any view.




**Metric**

**English**

**Speed View :** This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), Adaptive Cruise Control speed, Forward Collision Alert, Lane Departure Warning, and Vehicle Ahead indicator. Some information only appears on vehicles that have these features, and when they are active.

**Metric**

**English**

**Audio/Phone View :** This display includes the information in speed view along with audio/phone information. The current radio station, media type, and incoming calls will be displayed.

All HUD views may briefly display audio information when the driver uses the steering wheel controls to adjust the audio settings appearing in the instrument cluster.

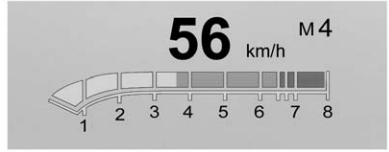
Incoming phone calls appearing in the instrument cluster may also display in any HUD view.

**Metric**

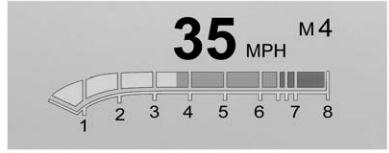
**English**

**Navigation View :** This display includes the information in speed view along with Turn-by-Turn Navigation information. When navigation routing is not active, “No Route Active” is displayed.

Navigation Turn-by-Turn Alerts shown in the instrument cluster may also be displayed in any HUD view.




**Metric**




**English**

**Performance View :** This display gives the speedometer reading (in English or metric units), rpm reading, transmission positions, and gear shift indicator.

## Care of the HUD

Clean the inside of the windshield to remove any dirt or film that could reduce the sharpness or clarity of the HUD image.

Clean the HUD lens with a soft cloth sprayed with glass cleaner. Wipe the lens gently, then dry it.

## HUD Troubleshooting

Check that:

- Nothing is covering the HUD lens.
- HUD brightness setting is not too dim or too bright.
- HUD is adjusted to the proper height.
- Polarized sunglasses are not worn.
- Windshield and HUD lens are clean.

If the HUD image is not correct, contact your dealer.

The windshield is part of the HUD system. See *Windshield Replacement* ⇨ *320*.

# Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may display one after the other.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing SEL. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed. All messages should be taken seriously and clearing the messages does not correct the problem.

The following are some of the vehicle messages that may be displayed depending on the vehicle content.

## Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

### BATTERY SAVER ACTIVE

This message displays when the vehicle has detected that the battery voltage is dropping beyond a reasonable point. The battery saver system starts reducing features of the vehicle that may be noticed. At the point that features are disabled, this message displays. Turn off unnecessary accessories to allow the battery to recharge.

### LOW BATTERY

This message is displayed when the battery voltage is low. See *Battery - North America* ⇨ *316*.

### SERVICE BATTERY CHARGING SYSTEM

This message is displayed when there is a fault in the battery charging system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### TRANSPORT MODE ON

This message is displayed when the vehicle is in transport mode. Some features can be disabled while in this mode, including Remote Keyless Entry (RKE), remote start, and the vehicle alarm system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service to turn transport mode off.

## Brake System Messages

### BRAKE FLUID LOW

This message is displayed when the brake fluid level is low. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *315*.

### STEP ON BRAKE TO RELEASE PARK BRAKE

This message is displayed if you attempt to release the Electric Parking Brake without the brake pedal applied. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.

### RELEASE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed if the Electric Parking Brake is on while the vehicle is in motion. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.

### SERVICE BRAKE ASSIST

This message may be displayed when there is a problem with the brake boost assist system. When this message is displayed, the brake boost assist motor might be heard operating and you might notice pulsation in the brake pedal. This is normal under these conditions. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### SERVICE PARKING BRAKE

This message is displayed when there is a problem with the parking brake. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## Compass Messages

Dashes may be displayed if the vehicle temporarily loses communication with the Global Positioning System (GPS).

## Cruise Control Messages

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) speed is set. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258*.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE TEMPORARILY UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when attempting to activate Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) when it is temporarily unavailable. The ACC system does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

### CRUISE SET TO XXX

This message displays when the cruise control speed is set. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256*.

### NO CRUISE BRAKING GAS PEDAL APPLIED

This message displays when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active and the driver is pressing the gas pedal. When this occurs, ACC will not brake. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258*.

### SERVICE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

This message displays when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) needs service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### SHIFT TO PARK BEFORE EXITING

This message may display if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is engaged holding the vehicle at a stop, and the driver attempts to exit the vehicle. Put the vehicle in P (Park) before exiting.

## Door Ajar Messages

### DOOR OPEN

A door open symbol will be displayed on the DIC showing which door is open. If the vehicle has been shifted out of P (Park), a DOOR OPEN message will also be displayed. The DOOR OPEN message may also be displayed if the vehicle starts to move. Close the door completely.

### HOOD OPEN

This message will display along with a hood open symbol when the hood is open. A chime may also sound. Close the hood completely.

### TRUNK OPEN

This message will display along with a symbol when the trunk is open. Close the trunk completely.

## Engine Cooling System Messages

### A/C OFF ENGINE COOLANT HOT

This message displays when the engine coolant becomes hotter than the normal operating temperature. To avoid added strain on a hot engine, the air conditioning compressor automatically turns off. When the coolant temperature returns to normal, the air conditioning compressor turns back on. The vehicle can continue to be driven.

If this message continues to appear, have the system repaired by your dealer as soon as possible to avoid damage to the engine.

### ENGINE OVERHEATED — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds when the engine coolant temperature is too hot. The engine coolant temperature warning light will also be on. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

### ENGINE OVERHEATED — TURN VEHICLE OFF

This message displays and a continuous chime sounds if the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation. The engine coolant temperature warning light will flash. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message clears when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

## Engine Oil Messages

### CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON

This message displays when the engine oil needs to be changed. When you change the engine oil, be

sure to reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*, *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*, *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*, and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

### ENGINE OIL HOT, IDLE ENGINE

This message displays when the engine oil temperature is too hot. Stop and allow the vehicle to idle until it cools down.

### ENGINE OIL LOW — ADD OIL

On some vehicles, this message displays when the engine oil level may be too low. Check the oil level before filling to the recommended level. If the oil is not low and this message remains on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.

### OIL PRESSURE LOW — STOP ENGINE

This message displays if low oil pressure levels occur. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check the oil as soon as possible and have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

## Engine Power Messages

### ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The vehicle may be driven at a reduced speed while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Anytime this message stays on, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

## Fuel System Messages

### FUEL LEVEL LOW

This message displays when the vehicle is low on fuel. Refuel as soon as possible.

### TIGHTEN GAS CAP

This message displays when the fuel cap is not on tight. Tighten the fuel cap.

## Key and Lock Messages

### NO REMOTE KEY WAS DETECTED PLACE KEY IN TRANSMITTER POCKET THEN START YOUR VEHICLE

This message displays when trying to start the vehicle if an RKE transmitter is not detected. The transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

### NO REMOTE DETECTED

This message displays when the transmitter battery may be weak. See “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

### NO REMOTE DETECTED PRESS BRAKE TO RESTART

This message displays when attempting to turn off the vehicle and the RKE transmitter is no longer detected. Restarting is allowed without the RKE transmitter for five minutes. Press the brake pedal to restart the vehicle.

### NUMBER OF KEYS PROGRAMMED

This message displays when programming new keys to the vehicle.

### REMOTE LEFT IN VEHICLE

This message displays when leaving the vehicle with the RKE transmitter still inside.

### REPLACE BATTERY IN REMOTE KEY

This message displays when the battery in the RKE transmitter needs to be replaced.

## Lamp Messages

### AFL (ADAPTIVE FORWARD LIGHTING) LAMPS NEED SERVICE

This message displays when the AFL system is disabled and needs service. See your dealer. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *164*.

### AUTOMATIC LIGHT CONTROL ON/OFF

This message is displayed when the exterior lamp control is in AUTO and the lights have turned on or off. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *163*.

### XXX TURN INDICATOR FAILURE

When one of the turn signals is out, this message displays to show which bulb needs to be replaced. See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ *320* and *Replacement Bulbs* ⇨ *322*.

### TURN SIGNAL ON

This message is displayed if the turn signal has been left on. Turn off the turn signal.

## Object Detection System Messages

### 24 GHz RADARS OFF

This message displays when driving in certain areas where there may be radar interference. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), and the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System may not work or may not work as well. The vehicle does not need service.

### AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP OFF

This message displays when the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System has been turned off. See *Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System* ⇨ *273*.

## AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP REDUCED

This message displays when the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System has been set to the Alert setting. This setting disables most FAB functions. Some last-second automatic braking capability is still provided with the Alert setting, but braking is less likely to occur. See *Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System* ⇨ *273*.

## AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System has been unavailable for some time. The FAB System does not need service. This message can display under the following conditions:

- The front of the vehicle or windshield is not clean. Keep these areas clean and free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the object detection performance.

This message may also be displayed if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

## FORWARD COLLISION ALERT OFF

This message displays when the Forward Collision Alert has been turned off.

## FRONT CAMERA BLOCKED CLEAN WINDSHIELD

This message displays when the camera is blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windshield behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue. The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and the Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system will not operate. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), and the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System may not work or may not work as well.

## LANE CHANGE ALERT OFF

This message indicates that the driver has turned the Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) and Lane Change Alert (LCA) systems off.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) and Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system is temporarily unavailable. The LKA system does not need service.

This message could be due to the camera being blocked. Cleaning the outside of the windshield behind the rearview mirror may correct the issue.

## REAR AUTO BRAKE/PARK ASSIST OFF

This message displays when the Parking Assist system has been turned off or when there is a temporary condition causing the system to be disabled.

## REAR AUTO BRAKE AND PARK ASSIST UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when attempting to activate the parking and backing features of the Driver Assistance System when they are temporarily unavailable. The system does not need service.

This can occur under the following conditions:

- The radar is not clean. Keep the radar sensors free of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush. Clean the entire front and/or rear of the vehicle. For cleaning instructions, see *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with the radar object detection or camera performance.

See *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *266*.

## SERVICE AUTOMATIC COLLISION PREP

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), and/or the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System may not work. Do not use these systems until the vehicle has been repaired.

## SERVICE DRIVER ASSIST SYSTEM

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the system.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Forward Collision Alert (FCA), the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System, Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing, and/or the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system may not work. Do not use these systems until the vehicle has been repaired.

## SERVICE FRONT CAMERA

If this message remains on after continued driving, take the vehicle to your dealer for service. Do not use the Lane Keep Assist (LKA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), and Forward Collision Alert (FCA) features.

## SERVICE PARK ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the Parking Assist system. Do not use this system to help you park. See your dealer for service.

## SERVICE REAR AUTO BRAKE AND PARK ASSIST

This message displays if there is a problem with the parking and backing features of the Driver Assistance System. Do not use this system to help park or back the vehicle. See your dealer for service.

## SERVICE SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM

If this message remains on after continued driving, the vehicle needs service. Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Lane Change Alert (LCA), and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) features will not work. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

### SIDE DETECTION SYSTEM UNAVAILABLE

This message indicates that Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Lane Change Alert (LCA), and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) are disabled either because the sensor is blocked and cannot detect vehicles in the blind zone, or the vehicle is passing through an open area, such as the desert, where there is insufficient data for operation. This message may also activate during heavy rain or due to road spray. The vehicle does not need service. For cleaning, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.

### TAKE STEERING

If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert and chime may be provided. Move the steering wheel to dismiss. See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *277*.

## Ride Control System Messages

### ALL WHEEL DRIVE OFF

If the vehicle has the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system, this message displays when there is a temporary condition making the AWD system unavailable. The vehicle will run in 2WD. This could be caused by:

- Loss of wheel or vehicle speed
- AWD system overheat
- Certain vehicle electrical conditions

This message turns off when the above conditions are no longer present and the warning message is reset.

See *All-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *245*.

### PERFORMANCE TRACTION 1 - WET (V-Series Only)

This message displays when this Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. The TCS and StabiliTrak OFF cluster lights will also be on when this mode is selected. Launch Control is available when this mode is selected. In this mode, the Traction Control and Active Handling System are available but intended for use on wet race track conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly. See “Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)” under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

### PERFORMANCE TRACTION 2 - DRY (V-Series Only)

This message displays when this Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. The TCS and StabiliTrak OFF cluster lights will also be on when this mode is selected. Launch Control is available when this mode is selected. In this mode, the Traction Control and Active Handling System are available but intended for use on dry race track conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly. See “Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)” under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

### PERFORMANCE TRACTION 3 - SPORT 1 (V-Series Only)

This message displays when this Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. The TCS and StabiliTrak OFF cluster lights will also be on when this mode is selected. Launch Control is available when this mode is selected. In this mode, the Traction Control and Active Handling System are available but intended for use on dry race track conditions. Adjust your driving accordingly. See "Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)" under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

### PERFORMANCE TRACTION 4 - SPORT 2 (V-Series Only)

This message displays when this Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. The TCS and StabiliTrak OFF cluster lights will also be on when this mode is selected. Launch Control is available when this mode is selected. In this mode, the Traction Control is available but intended for use on dry race track conditions. The Active Handling System is disabled when this mode is selected. This mode will require more driver skill than modes 1–3. Adjust your driving accordingly. See "Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)" under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

### PERFORMANCE TRACTION 5 - RACE (V-Series Only)

This message displays when this Performance Traction Management (PTM) mode is selected. The TCS and StabiliTrak OFF cluster lights will also be on when this mode is selected. Launch Control is available when this mode is selected. In this mode, the Traction Control is available but intended for use on dry race track conditions. The Active Handling System is disabled when this mode is selected. This mode will require more driver skill than modes 1–4. Adjust your driving accordingly. See "Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)" under *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252*.

### REAR AXLE OFF

When this message is displayed, the vehicle's handling capabilities will be reduced during severe maneuvers. StabiliTrak will be affected. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

### SERVICE ALL WHEEL DRIVE

This message displays if a problem occurs with the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system. The vehicle will run in 2WD. This could be caused by:

- An electronics problem
- Worn out or overheated clutch plates
- Various electrical issues

The system may need service. See your dealer.

### SERVICE REAR AXLE

If there is a problem detected with the Electronic Limited-Slip Rear Axle, this message displays. When displayed, the system is not operational and driving should be adjusted accordingly. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

When this message is displayed, the vehicle's handling capabilities will be reduced during severe maneuvers. StabiliTrak will be affected. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

### SERVICE STABILITRAK

This message displays if there is a problem with the StabiliTrak system. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

### SERVICE SUSPENSION SYSTEM

This message displays when there is a problem with the Magnetic Ride Control system. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*. Have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

### SERVICE TRACTION CONTROL

This message displays when there is a problem with the Traction Control System (TCS). See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

### TRACTION CONTROL OFF

This message may display when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

### TRACTION CONTROL ON

This message may display when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned on. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

## Airbag System Messages

### SERVICE AIRBAG

This message displays if there is a problem with the airbag system. See your dealer for service.

## Safety Belt Messages

### AUTOMATIC SEATBELT TIGHTENING UNAVAILABLE

This message displays when the Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System, if equipped, becomes unavailable. This could be caused by a temporary condition. If the message continues to display, see your dealer.

### SERVICE AUTOMATIC SEATBELT TIGHTENING SYSTEM

If this message displays, take the vehicle to your dealer to repair the Automatic Safety Belt Tightening System, if equipped.

## Security Messages

### THEFT ATTEMPTED

This message displays if the vehicle detects a tamper condition.

## Service Vehicle Messages

### SERVICE AC SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the air conditioning system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### SERVICE POWER STEERING

This message displays and a chime may sound when there may be a problem with the power steering system. If this message displays and a reduction in steering performance or loss of power steering assistance is noticed, see your dealer.

### SERVICE STEERING COLUMN LOCK

This message displays if there is a problem with the steering column lock. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### SERVICE VEHICLE SOON

This message displays if there is a problem with the vehicle. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

## Starting the Vehicle Messages

### PRESS BRAKE TO START

This message is displayed when attempting to start the vehicle without first pressing the brake pedal.

### SERVICE KEYLESS START SYSTEM

This message is displayed if there is a problem with the pushbutton start system. Take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

### TURN STEERING WHEEL START VEHICLE AGAIN

This message may display when you try to start the vehicle, but the column remains locked. Try turning the steering wheel while starting the vehicle to unlock the steering column. If the vehicle still does not start, turn the steering wheel the other way, and try starting the vehicle again.

## Tire Messages

### SERVICE TIRE MONITOR SYSTEM

This message displays if there is a problem with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

### TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE

This message displays when the system is learning new tires. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

### TIRE PRESSURE LOW ADD AIR TO TIRE

This message displays when the pressure in one or more of the tires is low.

This message also displays LEFT FRONT, RIGHT FRONT, LEFT REAR, or RIGHT REAR to indicate the location of the low tire.

The low tire pressure warning light will also come on. See *Tire Pressure Light* ⇨ *127*.

If a tire pressure message appears on the DIC, stop as soon as you can. Inflate the tires by adding air until the tire pressure is equal to the values shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tires* ⇨ *332*, *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*, and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

You can receive more than one tire pressure message at a time. The DIC also shows the tire pressure values. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

## Transmission Messages

### MANUAL TRANSMISSION — RELEASE CLUTCH PEDAL

This message displays and a chime sounds if the manual transmission clutch pedal is partially applied for an extended period of time while the vehicle is being driven. Driving with the clutch pedal applied can reduce the life of the clutch. Fully release the clutch pedal after each gear change.

### REDUCED PERFORMANCE — REDUCE CLUTCH USE

This message displays and engine torque is momentarily limited if excessive manual transmission clutch slip is detected while the clutch pedal is fully released. Reduce clutch slip during acceleration from a stop and during gear changes to allow the clutch to cool. This should prevent further slips with the clutch pedal fully released. If this message displays repeatedly, see your dealer.

### SERVICE TRANSMISSION

This message displays if there is a problem with the transmission. See your dealer.

### SHIFT DENIED

This message displays when using the Driver Shift Control (DSC) and attempting to shift to a gear not appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *241*.

### SHIFT TO PARK

This message displays when the transmission needs to be shifted to P (Park). This may appear when turning the ignition off if the vehicle is not in P (Park).

### TRANSMISSION HOT — IDLE ENGINE

This message displays and a chime sounds if the automatic transmission fluid in the vehicle gets hot. Driving with the automatic transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message clears when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

### TRANSMISSION HOT — SLOW DOWN

This message displays and a chime sounds if the manual transmission fluid is hot and if the vehicle speed is high. Driving with the manual transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Drive at a slower speed to cool the manual transmission fluid. This

message clears when the vehicle has slowed sufficiently or if the manual transmission fluid has cooled sufficiently.

## Vehicle Reminder Messages

### ICE POSSIBLE DRIVE WITH CARE

This message displays when ice conditions are possible.

## Vehicle Speed Messages

### SELECTED SPEED LIMIT EXCEEDED

This message is displayed when the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed. See "Speed Warning" under *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

### VEHICLE SPEED LIMITED

This message is displayed under certain conditions when there is a problem and the vehicle's speed is being limited.

## Washer Fluid Messages

### WASHER FLUID LOW ADD FLUID

This message may display when the washer fluid level is low. Fill the windshield washer reservoir as soon as possible. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for the location of the windshield washer reservoir. Also, see *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.

# Vehicle Personalization

Use the audio system controls to access the personalization menus for customizing vehicle features.

The following are all possible personalization features. Depending on the vehicle, some may not be available.

**Base Radio Audio System Controls**

**MENU :** Press the center of the knob to enter the menus and select menu items. Turn the knob to scroll through the menus.

< **BACK :** Press to exit or move backward in a menu.

To access the personalization menu:

1. On the Home page, turn the MENU knob to highlight Settings and press the MENU knob.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the desired feature and press the MENU knob.

**CUE Infotainment System Audio System Controls**

To access the personalization menu:

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home page on the infotainment system display.
2. Touch the desired feature to display a list of available options.
3. Touch to select the desired feature setting.
4. Touch the ❮ Back screen button to return to the previous menu.

**Personalization Menus**

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Time and Date
- Driving Mode
- Language (Language)
- Valet Mode
- Radio
- Vehicle
- Bluetooth
- Apple CarPlay
- Android Auto
- Voice
- Display
- Rear Camera
- Return to Factory Settings
- Software Information

Each menu is detailed in the following information.

## Time and Date

Manually set the time and date. See *Clock (Base Radio)* ⇨ *109* or *Clock (Uplevel Radio)* ⇨ *109*.

## Driving Mode

Select and the following may display:

- Engine Sound Management

**Engine Sound Management**

Select Engine Sound Management, then choose from the available options. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*.

## Language (Language)

Select Language, then select from the available language(s).

The selected language will display on the system, and voice recognition will reflect the selected language.

## Valet Mode (If Equipped)

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations (if equipped).

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Press Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Press Back to go back to the previous menu.

## Radio

Press to display the Radio Menu and the following may display:

- Manage Favorites

- Number of Favorites Shown
- Audible Touch Feedback
- Auto Volume
- Bose AudioPilot
- Maximum Startup Volume
- Audio Cue Volume

**Manage Favorites**

This allows favorites to be edited. Select a displayed Favorite to edit. Select Rename to rename the favorite or Delete to delete it.

**Number of Favorites Shown**

Select to set the number of favorites to display.

Select the desired number or select Auto and the infotainment system will automatically adjust the number of favorites shown.

**Audible Touch Feedback**

This allows Audible Touch Feedback to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

**Auto Volume**

If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed.

**Bose® AudioPilot®**

This feature adjusts the volume based on the noise in the vehicle. See “Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology” in *Home Page* ⇨ *171*, *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*, or under “Infotainment System Settings” in the infotainment manual.

**Maximum Startup Volume**

This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, select + or − to increase or decrease.

**Audio Cue Volume**

If equipped, this feature adjusts the startup and shutdown sounds. To adjust the volume, select + or − to increase or decrease.

## Vehicle

Select and the following may display:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Comfort and Convenience
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

**Climate and Air Quality**

Select and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Heated Seats
- Auto Defog
- Auto Rear Defog

**Auto Fan Speed**

This feature will set the auto fan speed.

Select Low, Medium, or High.

**Auto Heated Seats**

When enabled, this feature will automatically activate heated seats at the level required by the interior temperature. The auto heated seats can be turned off by using the heated seat buttons on the center stack.

Select Off or On.

**Auto Defog**

When set to On, the front defog will automatically react to temperature and humidity conditions that may cause fogging.

Select Off or On.

**Auto Rear Defog**

If equipped, this feature will automatically turn on the rear window defog.

Select Off or On.

**Collision/Detection Systems**

Select the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following may display:

- Alert Type
- Auto Collision Preparation
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert
- Go Notifier
- Lane Change Alert

**Alert Type**

This feature will set crash alerts to beeps or seat vibrations. This setting affects all crash alerts including:

- Forward Collision
- Lane Departure Warning
- Adaptive Cruise Control
- Parking Assist
- Backing Warning

Select Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

**Auto Collision Preparation**

This feature will turn on or off the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) and Front Automatic Braking (FAB). The Off setting disables all FCA and FAB functions. With the Alert and Brake setting, both FCA and FAB are available. The Alert setting disables FAB, but some last-second automatic braking capability is still provided, though less likely to occur. See *Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System* ⇨ *273*.

Select Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

**Rear Cross Traffic Alert**

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

Select Off or On.

**Go Notifier**

This feature will give a reminder that Adaptive Cruise Control provides when it has brought the vehicle to a complete stop behind another stopping vehicle, and then that vehicle drives on. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258*.

Select Off or On.

**Lane Change Alert**

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *275*.

Select Off or On.

### Comfort and Convenience

Select and the following may display:

- Auto Memory Recall
- Easy Exit Options
- Chime Volume
- Reverse Tilt Mirror
- Rainsense Wipers

### Auto Memory Recall

This feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored 1 or 2 button positions when entering the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60*.

Select Off or On.

### Easy Exit Options

This feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored Exit button position when exiting the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *60*.

Select Off or On.

### Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Select + or − to adjust the volume.

### Reverse Tilt Mirror

When on, driver, passenger, or both driver and passenger mirrors will tilt downward when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse). See *Reverse Tilt Mirrors* ⇨ *48*.

Select Off, On - Driver and Passenger, On - Driver, or On - Passenger.

### Rainsense Wipers

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See "Rainsense™" in *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *107*.

Select Off or On.

### Lighting

Select and the following may display:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting
- Adaptive Forward Lighting

### Vehicle Locator Lights

This feature will flash the exterior lamps when 🔓 on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed to locate the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

### Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Select Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

### Adaptive Forward Lighting

This feature allows the headlamps to pivot horizontally to provide greater road illumination while turning. See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *164*.

Select Off or Corner and Curve Lighting.

### Power Door Locks

Select and the following may display:

- Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout

- Auto Door Unlock
- Delayed Door Lock

**Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout**

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If Off is selected, the Delayed Door Lock menu will be available.

Select Off or On.

**Auto Door Unlock**

This allows selection of which of the doors will automatically unlock when the vehicle is shifted into P (Park) with an automatic transmission or when the vehicle is turned off with a manual transmission.

Select Off, All Doors, or Driver Door.

**Delayed Door Lock**

When on, this feature will delay the locking of the doors. To override the delay, press the power door lock switch on the door.

Select Off or On.

**Remote Lock, Unlock, Start**

Select and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Remote Window Operation
- Passive Door Unlock
- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

**Remote Unlock Light Feedback**

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off or Flash Lights.

**Remote Lock Feedback**

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

**Remote Door Unlock**

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter.

Select All Doors or Driver Door.

**Remote Start Auto Heat Seats**

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On.

**Remote Window Operation**

This allows the window to be opened when pressing 🔓 on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Select Off or On.

**Passive Door Unlock**

This allows the selection of which doors will unlock when using the button on the driver door to unlock the vehicle.

Select All Doors or Driver Door.

**Passive Door Lock**

This allows passive locking to be turned on or off and selects feedback. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

Select Off, On with Horn Chirp, or On.

**Remote Left in Vehicle Alert**

This feature sounds an alert when the RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

## Bluetooth

Select and the following may display:

- Pair New Device
- Device Management
- Ringtones
- Voice Mail Numbers
- Text Message Alerts

**Pair New Device**

Select to pair a new device. See "Pairing" in "Infotainment Controls" under *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ *192* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ *196* or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *191* or "Pairing" in "Infotainment Controls" under "Bluetooth" in the infotainment manual.

**Device Management**

Select to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

**Ringtones**

Select to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring.

**Voice Mail Numbers**

This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. To change the voice mail number, select EDIT or press the EDIT button. Type in a new number, then select Save or press the Save button.

**Text Message Alerts**

This feature allows text messages to be received. See "Text Messaging" under "Phone" in the infotainment manual.

Select Off or On.

## Apple CarPlay™

Select and the following may display:

- Apple CarPlay
- Manage Apple CarPlay Devices

**Apple CarPlay**

This feature allows Apple devices to be connected to the infotainment system through a USB port.

Select Off or On.

**Manage Apple CarPlay Devices**

Select to manage Apple devices. Apple CarPlay must be on for this feature to be accessed.

## Android Auto

Select and the following may display:

- Android Auto

- Manage Android Auto Devices

**Android Auto**

Select to turn this feature off or on.

Select Off or On.

**Manage Android Auto Devices**

Select to manage Android devices. Android Auto must be on for this feature to be accessed.

## Voice

Select and the following may display:

- Confidence Threshold
- Prompt Length
- Audio Feedback Speed
- Display “What Can I Say?” Tips

**Confidence Threshold**

This feature allows the adjustment of the sensitivity of the speech recognition system.

Select Confirm More or Confirm Less.

**Prompt Length**

This feature adjusts the voice prompt length.

Select Short or Long.

**Audio Feedback Speed**

This feature adjusts the audio feedback speed.

Select Slow, Medium, or Fast.

**Display “What Can I Say?” Tips**

This feature gives voice command tips.

Select Off or On.

## Display

Select and the following may display:

- Mode
- Proximity Sensing
- Calibrate Touchscreen
- Turn Display Off

**Mode**

Select to change the display screen for day or night driving.

Select Auto, Day, or Night.

**Proximity Sensing**

This allows the feature to be turned on or off.

Select Off, On, or On-Map Only.

**Calibrate Touchscreen**

Select to calibrate the touchscreen, then follow the prompts.

**Turn Display Off**

Select to turn the display off. Press anywhere on the display area or any faceplate button to turn the display on.

## Rear Camera

Select and the following may display:

- Guidance Lines
- Rear Park Assist Symbols

**Guidance Lines**

Select to turn Off or On. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

**Rear Park Assist Symbols**

Select to turn Off or On. See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

### Return to Factory Settings

Select and the following may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings
- Clear All Private Data
- Restore Radio Settings

**Restore Vehicle Settings**

This allows selection of restoring vehicle settings.

Select Restore or Cancel.

**Clear All Private Data**

This allows selection to clear all private information from the vehicle.

Select Delete or Cancel.

**Restore Radio Settings**

This allows selection to restore radio settings.

Select Restore or Cancel.

### Software Information

Select to view the infotainment system current software information.

# Universal Remote System

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

## Universal Remote System Programming

If equipped, these buttons are in the overhead console.

This system can replace up to three remote control transmitters used to activate devices such as garage door openers, security systems, and home automation devices. These

instructions refer to a garage door opener, but can be used for other devices.

Do not use the Universal Remote system with any garage door opener that does not have the stop and reverse feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982.

Read these instructions completely before programming the Universal Remote system. It may help to have another person assist with the programming process.

Keep the original hand-held transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming. Erase the programming when vehicle ownership is terminated. See “Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons” later in this section.

To program a garage door opener, park outside directly in line with and facing the garage door opener receiver. Clear all people and objects near the garage door.

Make sure the hand-held transmitter has a new battery for quick and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

### Programming the Universal Remote System

For questions or help programming the Universal Remote system, call 1-800-355-3515 or see www.homelink.com.

Programming involves time-sensitive actions, and may time out causing the procedure to be repeated.

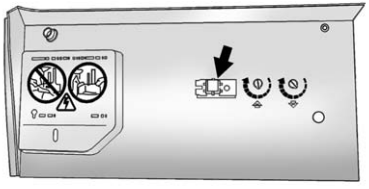
To program up to three devices:

1. Hold the end of the hand-held transmitter about 3 to 8 cm (1 to 3 in) away from the Universal Remote system buttons with the indicator light in view. The hand-held transmitter was supplied by the manufacturer of the garage door opener receiver.
2. At the same time, press and hold both the hand-held transmitter button and one of the three Universal Remote system buttons to be used to operate the garage door. Do not release either button until the indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash. Then release both buttons.

   Some garage door openers may require substitution of Step 2 with the procedure under “Radio Signals for Canada and Some Gate Operators” later in this section.
3. Press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for five seconds while watching the indicator light and garage door activation.
   - If the indicator light stays on continuously or the garage door moves when the button is pressed, then programming is complete. There is no need to complete Steps 4–6.
   - If the indicator light does not come on or the garage door does not move, a second button press may

be required. For a second time, press and hold the newly programmed button for five seconds. If the light stays on or the garage door moves, programming is complete.

- If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds, then changes to a solid light and the garage door does not move, continue with programming Steps 4–6.



**Learn or Smart Button**

4. After completing Steps 1–3, locate the Learn or Smart button inside the garage on the garage door opener receiver. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.
5. Press and release the Learn or Smart button. Step 6 must be completed within 30 seconds of pressing this button.
6. Inside the vehicle, press and hold the newly programmed Universal Remote system button for two seconds and then release it. If the garage door does not move or the lamp on the garage door opener receiver does not flash, press and hold the same button a second time for two seconds, then release it. Again, if the door does not move or the garage door lamp does not flash, press and hold the same button a third time for two seconds, then release it.

The Universal Remote system should now activate the garage door.

Repeat the process for programming the two remaining buttons.

## Radio Signals for Canada and Some Gate Operators

For questions or programming help call 1-800-355-3515 or see www.homelink.com.

Canadian radio-frequency laws and some U.S. gate operators require transmitter signals to time out or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for the Universal Remote system to pick up the signal during programming.

If the programming did not work, replace Step 2 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” with the following:

Press and hold the Universal Remote system button while pressing and releasing the hand-held transmitter button every two seconds until the signal has been successfully accepted by the Universal Remote system. The Universal Remote system indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 3 under “Programming the Universal Remote System” to complete.

## Universal Remote System Operation

### Using the Universal Remote System

Press and hold the appropriate Universal Remote system button for at least one-half second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

### Erasing Universal Remote System Buttons

Erase all programmed buttons when vehicle ownership is terminated.

To erase:

1. Press and hold the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash. This should take about 10 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

### Reprogramming a Single Universal Remote System Button

To reprogram any of the system buttons:

1. Press and hold any one of the buttons. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the button, proceed with Step 1 under “Programming the Universal Remote System.”

# Lighting

**Exterior Lighting**
Exterior Lamp Controls . . . . . 160
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder . . . . . 162
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer . . . . . 162
Flash-to-Pass . . . . . 162
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) . . . . . 163
Automatic Headlamp System . . . . . 163
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) . . . . . 164
Hazard Warning Flashers . . . . . 164
Turn and Lane-Change Signals . . . . . 164

**Interior Lighting**
Instrument Panel Illumination Control . . . . . 165
Courtesy Lamps . . . . . 165
Dome Lamps . . . . . 165
Reading Lamps . . . . . 166

**Lighting Features**
Entry Lighting . . . . . 167
Exit Lighting . . . . . 167
Battery Power Protection . . . . . 167
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver . . . . . 167

# Exterior Lighting

## Exterior Lamp Controls

The exterior lamp control is on the turn signal lever.

Turn the control to the following positions:

⏻ **(Off) :** Turns off the exterior lamps. The knob returns to the AUTO position after it is released.

Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

In Canada, the headlamps will automatically reactivate when the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) on automatic transmission vehicles,

and when the parking brake is released on manual transmission vehicles.

**AUTO (Automatic) :** Automatically turns the exterior lamps on and off, depending on outside lighting.

**(Parking Lamps) :** Turns on the parking lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

**(Headlamps) :** Turns on the headlamps together with the parking lamps and instrument panel lights.

## IntelliBeam® System

If equipped, this system turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off according to surrounding traffic conditions.

The system turns the high-beam headlamps on when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.

This light comes on in the instrument cluster when the IntelliBeam system is enabled.

### Turning On and Enabling IntelliBeam

To enable the automatic high-beam system, with the turn signal lever in the neutral position, turn the exterior lamp control to AUTO. The blue high-beam on light appears on the instrument cluster when the high beams are on.

### Driving with IntelliBeam

The system only activates the high beams when driving over 40 km/h (25 mph).

There is a sensor near the top center of the windshield, which automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windshield clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under the automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's taillamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h (12 mph).
- The turn signal lever is moved forward to the high-beam position or the Flash-to-Pass feature is used. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *162* and *Flash-to-Pass* ⇨ *162*.
- The IntelliBeam system can be disabled by the High/Low-Beam Changer or the Flash-to-Pass feature. If this happens, the High/Low-Beam Changer must be activated two times within five seconds to reactivate the IntelliBeam system. The

instrument cluster light will come on to indicate the IntelliBeam is reactivated.

The high beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect other vehicle's lamps because of any of the following:

- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's lamp(s) cannot be detected due to dense exhaust, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- Your vehicle's windshield is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- Your vehicle's windshield is covered with ice, dirt, haze, or other obstructions.
- Your vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim high and not detect headlamps and taillamps.
- You are driving on winding or hilly roads.

You may need to manually disable or cancel the high-beam headlamps by turning the low-beam headlamps on, if any of the above conditions exist.

## Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime will sound if the exterior lamp control is left on in either the headlamp or parking lamp position and the driver door is opened with the ignition off.

## Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

**(Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer) :** Push the turn signal lever away from you and release, to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.

This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

## Flash-to-Pass

This feature allows the high-beam headlamps to be used to signal the driver in front of you that you want to pass.

Pull and hold the turn signal lever toward you to use this feature. When this is done the following will occur:

- If the headlamps are off or in low-beam mode, the high-beam headlamps will turn on. They will stay on as long as the lever is held there. Release the lever to turn them off.

- If the headlamps are in high-beam mode, they will go to low beam.

## Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. Fully functional DRL are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system turns on the low-beam headlamps at a reduced brightness. For vehicles with High Intensity Discharge (HID) headlamps, there is a dedicated DRL. The DRL will come on when all of the following conditions are met:

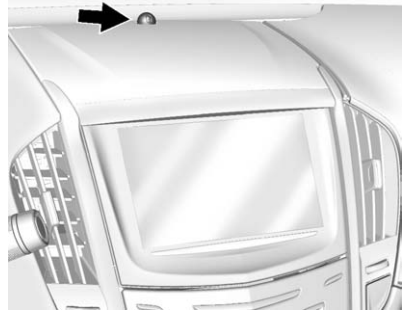
- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.
- The parking brake is released or the vehicle is not in P (Park).

The taillamps, sidemarker lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps will not be on.

The DRL turn off when the headlamps are turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

## Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

If the vehicle is started in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system comes on immediately. If it is light outside when the vehicle leaves the garage, there is a slight delay before the automatic headlamp system changes to the DRL. During that delay, the instrument cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure the instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *165*.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

### Lights On with Wipers

If the windshield wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, parking lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or ≋ to disable this feature.

## Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

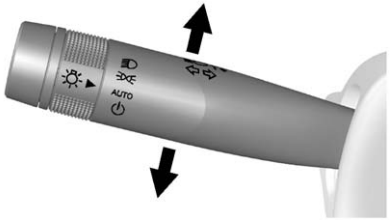
On vehicles with the AFL system, the headlamps pivot horizontally to provide greater road illumination while turning. To enable AFL, set the exterior lamp control on the turn signal lever to the AUTO position. Moving the control out of the AUTO position will deactivate the system. AFL will operate when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 km/h (2 mph). AFL will not operate when the transmission is in R (Reverse). AFL is not immediately operable after starting the vehicle; driving a short distance is required to calibrate the AFL. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *160*.

## Hazard Warning Flashers

⚠ **(Hazard Warning Flashers) :** Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning flashers turn on automatically if the airbags deploy.

## Turn and Lane-Change Signals




Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. If the lever is briefly pressed and released, the turn signal flashes three times.

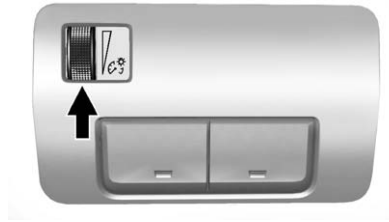
The turn and lane-change signal can be turned off manually by moving the lever back to its original position.

If after signaling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb might be burned out.

Replace any burned out bulbs. If a bulb is not burned out, check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers* ⇨ *323*.

# Interior Lighting

## Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument panel lighting and steering wheel controls can be adjusted.

**(Instrument Panel Illumination) :** Move the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the lights.

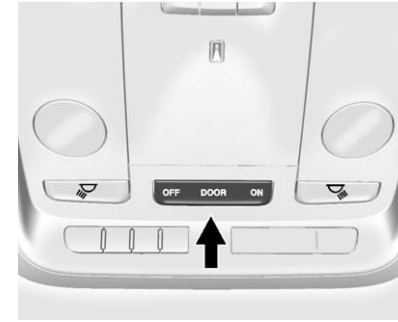
The brightness of the displays automatically adjusts based on outdoor lighting. The instrument panel illumination control will set the lowest level to which the displays will automatically be adjusted.

## Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and the dome lamp is in the DOOR position.

## Dome Lamps

The dome lamp is in the overhead console.




To change the dome lamp settings, press:

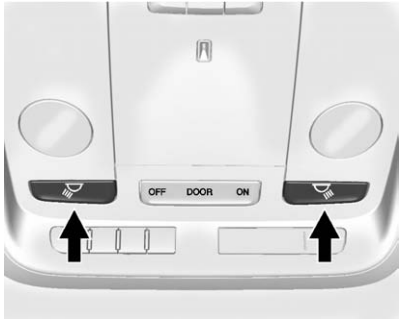
**OFF :** Turns the lamp off, even when a door is open.

**DOOR :** The lamp comes on when a door is opened.

**ON :** Turns the lamp on.

## Reading Lamps

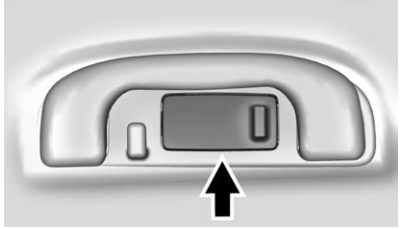
There are front and rear reading lamps. These lamps come on when any door is opened.




The front reading lamps are in the overhead console.

Press ⚡ or ⚡ to turn the lamps on or off.

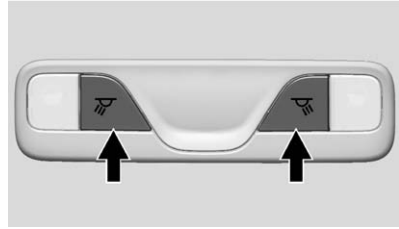
**Sedan**



The rear reading lamps are over the rear passenger doors.

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

**Coupe**



The rear reading lamps are in the headliner.

Press ⚡ or ⚡ to turn the lamps on or off.

# Lighting Features

## Entry Lighting

Some exterior lamps and most of the interior lights turn on briefly at night, or in areas of limited lighting when 🔓 is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*. When the driver door is opened, all control lights, Driver Information Center (DIC) lights, and door pocket lights turn on. After about 30 seconds the exterior lamps turn off, then the remaining interior lights dim to off. Entry lighting can be disabled manually by changing the ignition out of the OFF position, or by pressing 🔒 on the RKE transmitter.

This feature can be changed. See “Vehicle Locator Lights” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lights come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off. The dome lamp comes on after the ignition is changed to the OFF position. The exterior lamps and dome lamp remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

The exterior lamps turn off immediately by turning the exterior lamp control off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Battery Power Protection

The battery saver feature is designed to protect the vehicle's battery.

If some interior lamps are left on and the ignition is turned off, the battery rundown protection system automatically turns the lamp off after some time.

## Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off, if the parking lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10-minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the ⏻ position and then back to the ≡DO≡ or ≡D position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START position.

# Infotainment System

**Introduction**
Infotainment . . . . . 168
Theft-Deterrent Feature . . . . . 169
Overview . . . . . 170
Home Page . . . . . 171
Software Updates . . . . . 174

**Radio**
AM-FM Radio . . . . . 174
Satellite Radio . . . . . 176
Radio Reception . . . . . 177
Backglass Antenna . . . . . 178
Multi-Band Antenna . . . . . 178

**Audio Players**
CD Player . . . . . 179
USB Port . . . . . 181
SD Card Reader . . . . . 184
Auxiliary Jack . . . . . 184

**OnStar System**
OnStar System . . . . . 185

**Performance Data Recorder (PDR)**
Performance Data Recorder (PDR) . . . . . 186

**Phone**
Bluetooth (Overview) . . . . . 191
Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls) . . . . . 192
Bluetooth (Voice Recognition) . . . . . 196

**Trademarks and License Agreements**
Trademarks and License Agreements . . . . . 201

# Introduction

## Infotainment

Base radio information is included in this manual. See the infotainment manual for information on other available infotainment systems.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

**⚠ Warning**

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may gray out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features are also available through the instrument cluster and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation, faceplate buttons, and screen buttons.
- Set up the audio by presetting favorite stations, setting the tone, and adjusting the speakers.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command if equipped with Bluetooth phone capability.

See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *216*.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

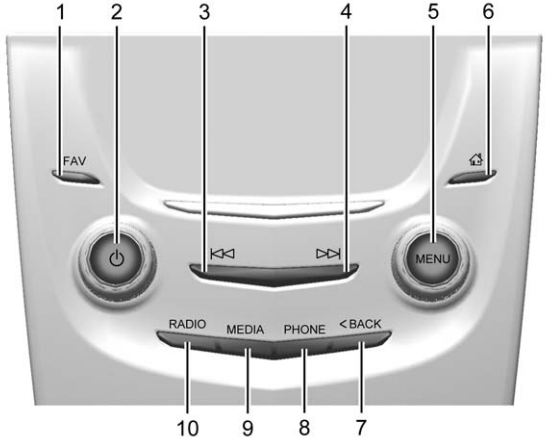
## Theft-Deterrent Feature

TheftLock® is designed to discourage theft of the vehicle's radio by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). The radio does not operate if it is stolen or moved to a different vehicle.

# Overview

## Infotainment System Overview

The infotainment system is controlled by using the buttons on the faceplate and steering wheel controls.




1. FAV (Favorite Pages)
   - Press to scroll through the favorite pages for each source.
2. ⏻ (Power/Volume)
   - Press to turn the audio on or off.
   - Press and hold to clear the screen and display the time.
   - Press to mute the system. Press again to unmute.
   - Turn the knob to adjust the volume.
3. ⏮ (Seek Previous/Fast Reverse)
   - Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
   - Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player* ⇨ *179*.
   - For AM, FM, or SiriusXM® (if equipped), press to seek to the previous strong station.

4. ⏭ (Seek Next/Fast Forward)
   - Press to seek the next track.
   - Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. See *CD Player* ⇨ *179*.
   - For AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped), press to seek to the next strong station.
5. MENU
   - Press to access the menu for the current audio source.
   - Press to select the highlighted menu option.
   - Turn to scroll through a list.
6. ⌂ (Home Page)
   - See “Home Page” following.
7. < BACK
   - Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.
   - On a page accessed directly by a faceplate button or Home Page screen button, press < BACK to go to the previous menu.
8. PHONE
   - See *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ *192* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ *196* or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *191*.
9. MEDIA
   - Press to change the audio source between CD, USB, SD Card, and AUX.
10. RADIO
    - Press to change the audio source between AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped).

## Home Page

### Home Page Features

The infotainment system displays a Home Page that makes it easy to access all of the applications. Turn the MENU knob to highlight feature icons. Press the MENU knob to access the feature’s options.

Various functions are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

**AUDIO :** Select the AUDIO screen icon to display the active source page. The sources available are AM, FM, SiriusXM® (if equipped), CD, USB/iPod, AUX, and SD Card. See *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*, *Satellite Radio* ⇨ *176*, *CD Player* ⇨ *179*, and *Auxiliary Jack* ⇨ *184*.

**PHONE :** Select the PHONE screen icon to display the PHONE main page. See “PHONE” in this section.

**NAV :** Select the NAV screen icon to display the last Turn-by-Turn maneuver if a destination was downloaded. See *Navigation* ⇨ *412*.

**PDR :** Select thePDR screen icon to display the Performance Data Recorder home screen. See *Performance Data Recorder (PDR)* ⇨ *186*.

**SETTINGS :** Select the SETTINGS screen icon to display the Settings main page. See “Setting Radio Preferences” in this section.

## Setting Radio Preferences

Select the SETTINGS screen icon to display the Settings menu and the following may display:

**Time :** See *Clock (Base Radio)* ⇨ *109* or *Clock (Uplevel Radio)* ⇨ *109*.

**Language (Current Language) :** This will set the display language in the radio, instrument cluster, and voice recognition. Press to display a list of languages. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

Valet Mode :

1. Type a four-digit code on the circular numeric keypad. Turn the MENU knob to highlight a number.
2. Press the MENU knob to select it. Do this for each one of the four digits. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code. Select LOCK to lock the system. This will also lock the vehicle storage locations, if equipped.
4. Type the four-digit code to unlock the system. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Radio :** See “Radio Setup” later in this section.

**Vehicle :** See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

**Display :** Press the MENU knob to turn the display on or off.

**Return to Factory Settings :** See “Return to Factory Settings” later in this section.

### Radio

While at the active screen, such as AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped), press and hold the area just above the chrome bar and below one of the preset screen buttons to save the current station as a favorite.

Press the area just above the chrome bar to recall a favorite station.

From the Home Screen, turn the MENU knob to select Settings application and press the MENU knob to select. Turn again to select "Radio" settings menu and press to select. Turn again to select "Manage Favorites" and press to select.

From the RADIO screen icon, the following may be displayed:

Manage Favorites :

- Turn the MENU knob and press to select a Favorite.
- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the DELETE screen button to delete a favorite.
- While a station is highlighted, press the MOVE screen button. The screen button will change to DROP. Turn the MENU knob and the station tab will follow the path to the desired location. Press the area just above the

chrome bar and below the DROP screen button to relocate the station.

**Number of Favorites Shown :** Select Auto to automatically adjust the number of Favorites pages shown as Favorites are added and removed. Another way to adjust is to select a number from 5–25 to show that selection of favorites. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Audible Touch Feedback :** Select Audible Touch Feedback to turn feedback Off or On. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Auto Volume (If Equipped) :** This feature adjusts the volume based on vehicle speed. The options are Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, or High. Select the desired volume. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Bose® AudioPilot® Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) :** While turned on, AutoPilot® detects ambient noise and vehicle speed to continuously monitor and adjust many aspects of the audio signal so that your music will sound the same at a set volume level.

The options are ON and OFF.

This feature is most effective at lower radio volume settings where background noise can affect how well the music can be heard while being played through your vehicle's audio system. At higher volume settings, where the music is much louder than the background noise, there may be little or no adjustments by AudioPilot®.

For more information on Bose® AudioPilot® noise compensation technology, see www.bose.com//audiopilot.

**Maximum Startup Volume :** This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level. To set the maximum startup volume, Turn the MENU knob to increase or decrease startup volume. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Rear Camera (If Equipped)**

From the Rear Camera screen button, the following may be displayed:

**Rear Camera Display :** This feature will turn the Rear Vision Camera display on or off. Select Rear Camera Display and then select Off or On. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

**Rear Park Assist Symbols :** This feature will display symbols where objects are detected by the Rear Parking Assist system. Select Rear Park Assist Symbols, then select Off or On. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

See *Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing* ⇨ *266*.

**Rear Cross Traffic Alert :** This feature will display an alert icon when cross traffic is detected. Select Rear Cross Traffic Alert, then select Off or On. Press < BACK to go back to the previous menu.

### Return to Factory Settings

Select Return to Factory Settings and the following list may display:

**Restore Vehicle Settings :** This option will restore factory vehicle personalization settings. Select Restore Vehicle Settings. A screen displays stating all vehicle customization settings will be restored to the factory settings. Select Cancel or Continue. Press < BACK to go back to the last menu.

**Clear All Private Data :** This option clears all private information from the vehicle. Select Clear All Private Data. Select Cancel or Continue. Press < BACK to go back to the last menu.

**Restore Radio Settings :** This option will restore factory radio settings. Select Restore Radio Settings. A screen displays stating all personalized radio settings will be restored back to the factory settings. Select Cancel or Continue. Press < BACK to go back to the last menu.

### English and Metric Unit Conversion

To change the display units between English and metric units, see *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

## Software Updates

See the following websites for information:

**Cadillac**

In the U.S., see www.cadillac.com.

In Canada, see www.cadillac.ca.

# Radio

## AM-FM Radio

### Playing the Radio

While on the audio main page, press the RADIO button to cycle through the radio sources: AM, FM, or SiriusXM® (if equipped) or press the MEDIA button to cycle through the media sources: CD, USB, SD, or AUX.

**AM, FM, SiriusXM (If Equipped)**

To select AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped):

1. Press ⌂.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the AUDIO screen icon.
3. Press the MENU knob to select.
4. Turn the MENU knob to highlight AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped) and press the MENU knob to select.

Press the RADIO faceplate button to change the active radio source. Press the MENU knob and the following radio settings may display:

**Tone Settings :**

- **Bass, Midrange, and Treble :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight. Press the MENU knob to select. Turn the MENU knob to adjust.
- **Balance :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight. Press the MENU knob to select. Turn the MENU knob left for more sound from the left speakers or right for more sound from the right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.
- **Fade :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight. Press the MENU knob to select. Turn the MENU knob to the left for more sound from the front speakers and to the right for more sound from the rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.
- **EQ (Equalizer)** : Turn the MENU knob to highlight. Turn the MENU knob to scroll through the options. Press the MENU knob to select. Press the < BACK button to go back to the previous menu.

**Station List :** Select to display a list of AM or FM stations. Press < BACK to go to the previous menu.

**Auto Volume :** If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. The options are Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, and High. Select the desired volume.

Press < BACK to go to the previous menu.

**Bose® AudioPilot® Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) :** While turned on, AutoPilot® detects ambient noise and vehicle speed to continuously monitor and adjust many aspects of the audio signal so that your music will sound the same at a set volume level.

The options are ON and OFF.

This feature is most effective at lower radio volume settings where background noise can affect how well the music can be heard while being played through your vehicle's audio system. At higher volume settings, where the music is much louder than the background noise, there may be little or no adjustments by AudioPilot®.

For more information on Bose® AudioPilot® noise compensation technology, see www.bose.com//audiopilot.

**EQ (Equalizer) Settings :** For vehicles equipped with a Bose Sound System the available choices are Manual and Talk.

**DSP Modes :** If equipped with a Bose® Surround Sound System, it will have the following four DSP modes:

- Normal : Adjusts the audio to normal mode. This provides the best sound quality for all seating positions.

- Driver : Adjusts the audio to give the driver the best possible sound quality.
- Rear : Adjusts the audio to give the rear seat occupants the best possible sound quality.
- Centerpoint® : Turns on Bose Centerpoint surround technology.

Centerpoint creates a surround sound from nearly any audio source: existing CD collection, satellite radio (if equipped), and audio players.

**Options for SiriusXM Only (If Equipped)**

**XM View :** XM view allows the channel list to be viewed by channel name, artist playing on channel, or song playing on channel. Turn the MENU knob to highlight XM view and press the MENU knob to select. Press < BACK to go to the previous menu.

**Channel List :** Select to display a list of SiriusXM channels. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press the MENU knob to select. Press < BACK to go to the previous menu.

Also see the radio settings common for all sources earlier in this section.

### Finding a Station

#### Seeking a Station

Press ⏮ or ⏭ to search for the previous or next strongest station.

#### Tuning a Station

Turn the MENU knob to manually find a station.

### Storing Radio Station Presets

Favorites are stored in the favorites area at the bottom of the screen.

Up to 25 preset stations can be stored under the following:

**AM, FM, or SiriusXM (if equipped) :** While on the active source main page, such as AM, FM, and SiriusXM (if equipped), press and hold the area just above the chrome bar and below one of the preset screen buttons to save the current station as a favorite. Press the area just above the chrome bar to recall a favorite station.

### Favorites

Favorites can be stored including radio stations and media.

To display the favorites page, press the FAV button on the radio faceplate.

From Settings press the MENU knob and press to select Manage Favorites. The Manage Favorites feature has the options of moving or deleting a favorite and how many favorite pages to display. See “Manage Favorites” in “Radio Setup” under *Home Page ⇨ 171*.

## Satellite Radio

### SiriusXM® Satellite Radio Service

Vehicles with a SiriusXM satellite radio tuner and a valid SiriusXM satellite radio subscription can receive SiriusXM programming.

SiriusXM is a satellite radio service based in the 48 contiguous United States and 10 Canadian provinces. SiriusXM satellite radio has a wide variety of programming and commercial-free music, coast to coast, and in digital-quality sound. A service fee is required to receive the SiriusXM service. See www.siriusxm.com or call 1-866-635-2349 in the U.S. In Canada, see www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-209-0079.

When SiriusXM is active, the channel name and number, song title, and artist display on the screen.

### Browsing SiriusXM Channels

To browse the SiriusXM channels:

1. While XM is the active source, press the MENU knob.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight XM Channel List. Press the MENU knob to select.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the desired channel and press to select that channel for playback.

## Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet. If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

### FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km (10 to 40 mi). Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

### AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

### SiriusXM Satellite Radio Service

If equipped, SiriusXM Satellite Radio Service provides digital radio reception. Tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. In addition, traveling or standing under heavy foliage, bridges, garages, or tunnels may cause loss of the SiriusXM signal for a period of time.

### Cell Phone Usage

Cell phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

## Backglass Antenna

The AM-FM antenna is integrated with the rear window defogger in the rear window. Do not scratch the inside surface or damage the lines in the glass. If the inside surface is damaged, it could interfere with radio reception. For proper radio reception, the antenna connector needs to be properly attached to the post on the glass.

If attaching a cell phone antenna to the glass, attach it between the grid lines.

**Caution**

Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window can damage the rear window antenna and/or the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not clear the inside rear window with sharp objects.

**Caution**

Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to the backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Multi-Band Antenna

The roof antenna is for OnStar, SiriusXM Satellite Radio (U.S. and Canada only), and GPS (Global Positioning System). Keep clear of obstructions for clear reception.
If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

# Audio Players

## CD Player

The player can be used for CD and MP3 audio.

With the vehicle on, insert a disc into the slot, label side up. Press the MEDIA button to select CD as a source.

The system is capable of playing:

- Most audio CDs
- CD-R
- CD-RW
- MP3 or unprotected WMA formats

When playing any compatible recordable disc, the sound quality can be reduced due to disc quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, or the way the disc has been handled.

There can be increased skipping, difficulty in recording tracks, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting.

If these problems occur, check the disc for damage or try a known good disc.

To avoid damage to the CD player:

- Do not use scratched or damaged discs.
- Do not apply labels to discs. The labels could get caught in the player.
- Insert only one disc at a time.
- Keep the loading slot free of foreign materials, liquids, and debris.
- Use a marking pen to label the top of the disc.

### Loading and Ejecting Discs

To load a disc:

1. Turn the vehicle on.
2. Insert a disc into the slot, label side up. The player pulls it in the rest of the way. If the disc is damaged or improperly loaded, there is an error and the disc ejects.

### Playing an Audio CD

Press the MEDIA button on the faceplate until CD is selected.

On the CD main page, a track number displays at the beginning of each track, or Song, Artist, and Album information displays when available.

Use the following buttons to control disc playback :

**⏮ or ⏪ (Seek Previous/Fast Reverse) :** While on the CD main page, press just above the chrome bar and below the ⏮.

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than five seconds, it seeks to the previous track. If longer than five seconds, the current track starts from the beginning.
- Press and hold to fast reverse through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

**▶| or ⏭ (Seek Next/Fast Forward) :** While on the CD main page, press just above the chrome bar and below the ▶|.

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release the button to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

**II /▶ (Pause/Play) :** Pauses and plays content while on the CD main page. Press just above the chrome bar and below pause/play to pause. Press again to resume.

**⤮ (Shuffle) :** Press just above the chrome bar and below the ⤮ to play the songs in random order. Press again to turn off.

If a Blu-ray Disc® or DVD disc is loaded into the CD player and the CD screen button is selected, a message comes on the screen to use the Video application. The Video application is only available on vehicles with rear seat entertainment.

**CD Menu**

While on the CD main page, press the MENU knob to display the CD menu and the following may display:

**Browse :** Select to display the files or songs on the CD. See “Browse CD Media” later in this section.

**Tone Settings :** Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See “Tone Settings” under *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**Auto Volume :** If equipped, this feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. Select the level between Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, and High. Press < BACK to go to the previous menu.

**Bose AudioPilot® :** If equipped, this feature can be turned on or off. See “Bose® AudioPilot®” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**EQ (Equalizer) Settings :** If equipped, this feature adjusts the pre-defined EQ modes. See “EQ (Equalizer) Settings” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**DSP Modes :** If equipped with a Bose® Surround Sound System, this feature adjusts DSP modes. See “DSP Modes” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

## Error Messages

If Disc Error displays and/or the disc comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons :

- The disc has an invalid or unknown format.
- The disc is very hot. Try the disc again when the temperature returns to normal.
- The road is very rough. Try the disc again when the road is smoother.
- The disc is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. Try the disc again later.
- There was a problem while burning the disc.
- The label is caught in the CD player.

If Disc Player Error displays, it could be for one of the following reasons :

- The player temperature is too high.
- There are load or eject errors.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error continues, contact your dealer.

### Playing an MP3 CD

To play an MP3 CD, follow the same instructions as “Playing an Audio CD.”

The following guidelines must be met when creating an MP3 disc, otherwise the CD might not play :

- Sampling rate: 16 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 24 kHz, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, and 48 kHz.
- Bit rates supported: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160, 192, 224, 256, and 320 kbps.
- Maximum number of folders: eight folders with 255 files per folder.
- Maximum of 1,000 files on a disc.
- Recorded on a CD-R or CD-RW.

#### Root Directory

The root directory is treated as a folder. All files contained directly under the root directory are accessed prior to any root directory folders.

#### Empty Folders

If a root directory or folder is empty or contains only folders, the player advances to the next folder in the file structure that contains a compressed audio file. The empty folder(s) are not displayed or numbered.

#### No Folder

When the CD only contains compressed audio files without any folders or playlists, all files are under the root folder.

## USB Port

### Playing from a USB

A USB mass storage device or Media Transfer Protocol (MTP) device can be connected to the USB port.

The USB port is in the center console under the armrest and, if equipped, in the storage behind the climate control system. See *Instrument Panel Storage* ⇨ *102*.

When connecting a non-Apple® device to the USB port in the center console, the message “This USB port only supports Apple Devices” will appear. Connect the device to the other port to initiate playback. Both ports are capable of charging devices.

#### USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disc drives are not supported.

To play a USB device:

- Connect the USB.
- Press the MEDIA button on the faceplate until the connected device is shown.

While the USB source is active, use the icons on the screen to operate the USB:

- ⏮ (Seek Previous/Fast Reverse)
- ⏭ (Seek Next/Fast Forward)
- ⏸/▶ (Play/Pause)
- ⤮ (Shuffle)

For information on how to use the screen icons, see “Playing an Audio CD.”

**USB Menu**

Press the MENU knob to display the USB menu and the following may display:

**Browse :** Select to display the files and folders on the USB device.

**Tone Settings :** Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See “Tone Settings” under “Playing an Audio CD.”

**Auto Volume :** If equipped, see “Playing an Audio CD.”

**Bose AudioPilot® :** If equipped, this feature can be turned on or off. See “Bose® AudioPilot®” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**EQ (Equalizer) Settings :**
If equipped, this feature adjusts the pre-defined EQ modes. See “EQ (Equalizer) Settings” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**DSP Modes :** If equipped with a Bose® Surround Sound System, this feature adjusts the DSP modes. See “DSP Modes” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

## Playing from an iPod®

This feature supports the following iPod models:

- iPod nano® (1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th generation)
- iPod with video (5.0 and 5.5)
- iPod classic® (6th generation)
- iPod touch® (1st and 2nd generation)

There may be problems with operation and function in the following situations:

- When connecting an iPod on which a more recent version of the firmware is installed than is supported by the infotainment system.
- When connecting an iPod on which firmware from other providers is installed.

To connect and control an iPod:

1. Connect one end of the standard iPod USB cable to the iPod's dock connector.
2. Connect the other end to a USB port in the center console or in the center stack storage bin.
3. Press the MEDIA button to select the source.

iPod music information displays on the radio's display and begins playing through the vehicle's audio system.

The iPod battery recharges automatically while the vehicle is on. When the vehicle is off while an iPod is connected using the iPod USB cable, the iPod battery stops charging and the iPod automatically turns off.

If the iPod is an unsupported model, it can still be listened to in the vehicle by connecting to the auxiliary input jack using a standard 3.5 mm (1/8 in) stereo cable.

**iPod Menu**

Press the MENU knob to display the iPod Menu and the following may display :

**Browse :** Select to display the files or songs on the iPod. See "Browse iPod Media" later in this section.

**Tone Settings :** Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See "Tone Settings" under "Playing an Audio CD."

**Auto Volume :** If equipped, see "Playing an Audio CD."

**Bose AudioPilot® :** If equipped, this feature can be turned on or off. See "Bose® AudioPilot®" in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**EQ (Equalizer) Settings :** If equipped, this feature adjusts the pre-defined EQ modes. See "EQ (Equalizer) Settings" in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**DSP Modes :** If equipped with a Bose® Surround Sound System, this feature adjusts the DSP modes. See "DSP Modes" in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**Browse iPod Media**

Use the following to browse:

**Playlists :**

1. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to view the playlists stored on the iPod.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select a playlist name to view a list of all songs in the playlist.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select the song from the list to begin playback.

**Artists :**

1. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to view the artists stored on the iPod.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select the album from the list.
4. To begin playback, select a song from the album.

**Albums :**

1. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to view the albums stored on the iPod.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select an album name to view a list of all songs on the album.

3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select the song from the list to begin playback.

**Genres :**

1. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to view the genres stored on the iPod.
2. Turn the MENU knob to select a genre name to view a list of artists of that genre.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight an artist and press to view albums by that artist.
4. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select an album to view songs.
5. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select the song from the list to begin playback.

**Songs :**

1. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to view a list of all songs stored on the iPod.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight and press to select the song from the list to begin playback.

### Playing from an iPhone® or iPad®

This feature supports iPhone 3G, iPhone 3GS, iPhone 4, and iPad.

Follow the same instructions as stated earlier for using an iPod.

## SD Card Reader

This vehicle has an SD card reader in the center console.

Set up any SD card while the vehicle is in P (Park).

1. Plug the SD card into the reader.
2. Press the MEDIA button to select the SD device.

If an SD card has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, press the MEDIA screen button repeatedly to cycle through all of the available audio source screens, until the SD card screen is selected.

**Playing Music from the SD Card**

An SD card is played the same way a USB device is played. See *USB Port* ⇨ *181*.

## Auxiliary Jack

This vehicle has an AUX port in the center console under the armrest. Possible auxiliary audio sources include:

- Laptop computer
- Audio music player

This jack is not an audio output. Do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack. Auxiliary devices should be set up while the vehicle is in P (Park).

Connect a 3.5 mm (1/8 in) cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, press the MEDIA faceplate button repeatedly to scroll through all of the available audio source screens, until the AUX source screen is selected.

### Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

### AUX Menu

Press the MENU knob to display the AUX menu and the following may display:

**Tone Settings :** Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equalizer). See “Tone Settings” under “Playing an Audio CD.”

**Auto Volume :** If equipped, see “Playing an Audio CD.”

**Bose AudioPilot® :** If equipped, this feature can be turned on or off. See “Bose® AudioPilot®” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**EQ (Equalizer) Settings :** If equipped, this feature adjusts the pre-defined EQ modes. See “EQ (Equalizer) Settings” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

**DSP Modes :** If equipped with a Bose® Surround Sound System, this feature adjusts the DSP modes. See “DSP Modes” in *AM-FM Radio* ⇨ *174*.

# OnStar System

## OnStar® with 4G LTE

If equipped with OnStar 4G LTE, up to seven devices, such as smartphones, tablets, and laptops, can be connected to high-speed Internet through the vehicle’s built-in Wi-Fi hotspot.

Call 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) to connect to an OnStar Advisor for assistance. See www.onstar.com for a detailed instruction guide, vehicle availability, details, and system limitations. Services and apps vary by make, model, year, carrier, availability, and conditions. 4G LTE service is available in select markets. 4G LTE performance is based on industry averages and vehicle systems design. Some services require a data plan.

# Performance Data Recorder (PDR)

If equipped, the PDR icon displays on the Home screen.

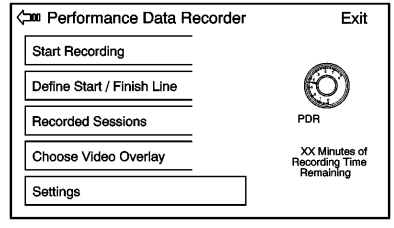
The PDR records video, audio, and vehicle data. This data is stored on a removable SD card in the glove box.

The recorded data is not stored anywhere else and is only accessible from the SD card.

To begin, insert a FAT32 formatted SD card, Class 10 required, into the glove box SD card reader.

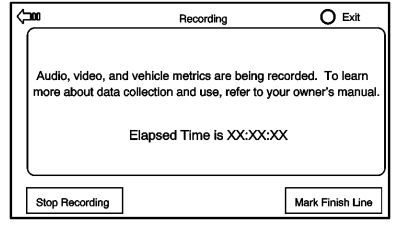
Touch the PDR icon to access the PDR menu. The options displayed are:

## Start Recording

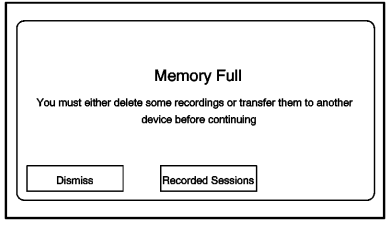



If the system is unable to begin recording, the Start Recording button is grayed out.

Touch the Start Recording button to begin recording. After recording begins, this button changes to Stop Recording. Touch to stop the recording session.

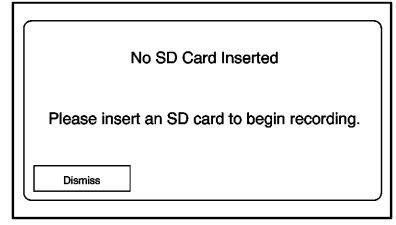


The elapsed time will show when recording. To define a finish line, see “Define Finish Line” later in this section.




If there is no available space on the SD card, a message displays. Delete or transfer recordings on the SD card or use another SD card with free space.

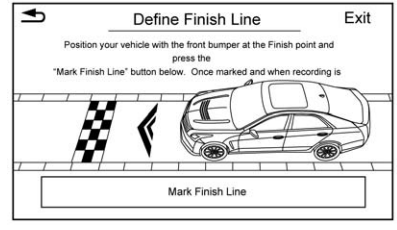
To delete a recording, go to the Recorded Sessions menu and touch ✕ next to the item. See “Recorded Sessions” later in this section.




If no SD card is inserted, a message displays.

### Define Finish Line

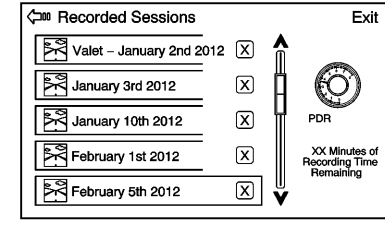
To track and record the vehicle’s lap times, the starting point of a lap must be set. Crossing this point activates the lap timer when recording.




To set the finish line, position the vehicle with the front bumper at the start/finish point. From the PDR menu, touch Define Finish Line and then touch Mark Finish Line. This can be done with the vehicle moving.

### Recorded Sessions

To view recorded videos, touch Recorded Sessions.




A list of recordings displays.

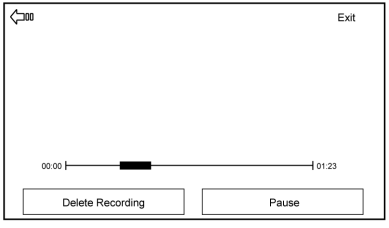
Select the recording to start playback.

Touch ✕ next to an item to delete that recording, Touch Yes to delete or No to cancel on the confirmation screen. Touch Dismiss to exit.

Video playback is not allowed while the vehicle is in motion.

Tap on the screen while the video is playing to display the video controls:

**Video Scrubber :** Changes the position and playback. The length of the bar corresponds to the time of the video. Advance or rewind the video by dragging along the bar.



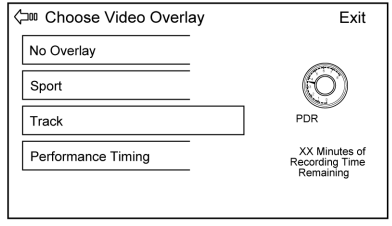

**Delete Recording :** Touch to delete the video. A confirmation screen displays. Touch Yes to delete or No to cancel.

**Pause/Play :** Touch to play or pause the video. The button will change when pressed.

**Back :** Touch to display the previous screen.

**Exit :** Touch to exit the current display.

**Choose Video Overlay**




Touch the Choose Video Overlay screen button to display the menu screen.

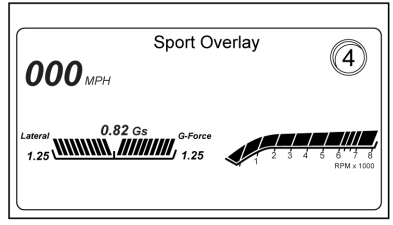
Select one:

- No Overlay
- Sport
- Track
- Performance Timing

**No Overlay:**

No vehicle data displays on top of the recorded video. Vehicle data is still available with the video when accessed in the toolbox software.

**Sport:**

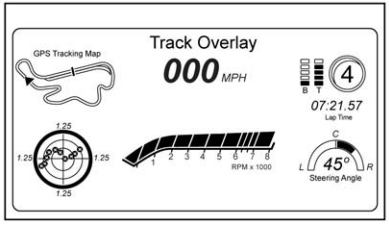



Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Up to three digits are displayed in km/h or MPH depending on vehicle settings.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): The vertical line and triangle show current RPMs. As the RPMs increase, the green backfill follows.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Automatic transmissions display PRDN. D can change to D1, D2, etc. When an automatic transmission is in manual shift mode, the display will change to M1, M2, etc. Manual transmissions display 1, 2, etc.

- Lateral G-Force Graphic: Left and Right G-Forces are displayed. The graphic fills to the left or the right depending on the measure value. The measured G-Force displays as a number at the top of the graphic.

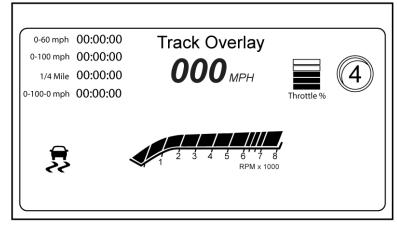
**Track:**




Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.
- GPS Tracking Map: Shows the vehicle's current position relative to a known route.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): The vertical line and triangle indicate current RPMs. As the RPMs increase, the orange backfill follows.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.
- Friction Bubble Graphic: Lateral and longitudinal G-Forces are displayed as a dot within a bubble. A red dot displays when the vehicle starts braking and turns green when the vehicle accelerates. The dot is white when the vehicle is not moving. A white dot is the default.
- Brake and Throttle Graphic: Displays the percentage value of brake and throttle pedal position from 0–100%.
- Steering Angle: The graphic fills from the center to the left or right depending on the direction of steering. The numerical steering angle displays below the graphic.
- StabiliTrak Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.
- Performance Traction Management (PTM) Mode: Displays the current PTM mode. The options are Wet, Dry, Sport 1, Sport 2, or Race.
- Current Lap Time: Displays the elapsed lap time if the finish line is defined and the vehicle has crossed the defined finish line at least once.

**Performance Timing:**




Displays these vehicle metrics:

- Vehicle Speed: Same as Sport.
- Engine Rotations Per Minute (RPMs): Same as Sport.
- Transmission State (Current Gear): Same as Sport.

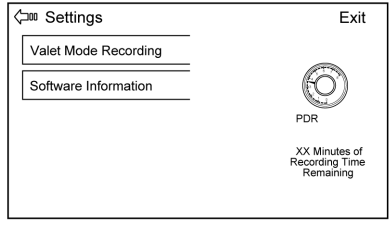
- 0–100 km/h (0–60 mph), 0–200 km/h (0–100 mph), 400 m (1/4 mi), and 0–200–0 km/h (0–100–0 mph): The timer starts recording as soon as the vehicle accelerates. As the vehicle passes each speed and distance milestone, it is displayed on the overlay.
- Throttle Position: Displays the percentage of throttle applied from 0–100%.
- StabiliTrak Active Indicator: The graphic only displays if the active handling systems are activated.

**Naming Convention**

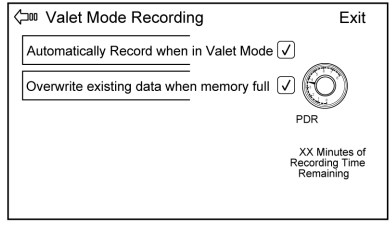
The recorded video file name is stored as the recorded date and the length of the recording.

If the recorded session was recorded while the system was in Valet Mode, the file name will display the mode, date, and length of time.

**Settings**




Touch the Settings button from the PDR menu to display settings.




**Valet Mode Recording :** Allows recording preferences to be selected. It is recommended that a blank SD card be used. Available choices are:

- Automatically record when in Valet Mode: Enables the PDR to begin recording as soon as the vehicle is in Valet Mode.
- Overwrite existing data when memory full: Allows manual overwriting of previous recordings, one at a time starting with the oldest, when the current recording requires additional storage to continue.

Audio will not record during Valet Mode.

**Software Information :** Displays PDR software information and version numbers.

**Toolbox Software :** Allows for the evaluation of the driver and the vehicle performance on a personal computer after a recorded event. See www.Cadillac.com to download the software.

# Phone

## Bluetooth (Overview)

Instructions for using the cell phone may differ between infotainment systems. For vehicles with the CUE infotainment system, see the CUE infotainment manual.

Bluetooth-capable systems can interact with many cell phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the cell phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimize driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the cell phone. Organize the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair cell phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all cell phones. See "Pairing" in this section.
- If the cell phone has voice dialing capability, learn to use that feature to access the address book or contact list. See "Voice Pass-Thru" in this section.
- See "Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers" in this section.

**⚠ Warning**

When using a cell phone, it can be distracting to look too long or too often at the screen of the phone or the infotainment system. Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable cell phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while in ON/RUN/START or ACC/ACCESSORY. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m (30 ft). Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system. See www.gm.com/bluetooth for more information about compatible phones.

### Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the faceplate and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

#### Steering Wheel Controls

**(Press to Talk) :** Press to answer incoming calls and start voice recognition.

**(End Call) :** Press to end a call, reject a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system.

### Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview* ⇨ *170*.

**MENU :** Turn to scroll through the phone menu, including Contacts, Recent Calls, Keypad, and Bluetooth Devices. Press to select an entry and dial when appropriate.

**⌂ (Home Page) :** Press to go to the Home Page. See *Home Page* ⇨ *171*.

**PHONE :** Press to enter the phone main menu. See *Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)* ⇨ *192* or *Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)* ⇨ *196* or *Bluetooth (Overview)* ⇨ *191*.

### Voice Recognition

The voice recognition system uses commands to control the system and dial phone numbers.

**Noise :** The system may not recognize voice commands if there is too much background noise.

**When to Speak :** A tone sounds to indicate that the system is ready for a voice command. Wait for the tone and then speak.

**How to Speak :** Speak clearly in a calm and natural voice.

### Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Use the ⏻ knob during a call to change the volume level. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

### Bluetooth Audio Quality

Turn off the Echo and Noise cancellation feature on your phone, if supported, for the best hands-free performance.

See www.gm.com/bluetooth.

### Other Information

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth® SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

## Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Overview* ⇨ *170*.

### Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset mode, use the OnStar command, “Transfer call.”

### Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls can be made using OnStar Hands-Free Calling, if available. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *411*.

**Pairing Information**

- Up to five cell phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the cell phone changes or the cell phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired cell phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired cell phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired cell phone in the order that they were newly paired to the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Connecting to a Different Phone” later in this section.

**Pairing a Phone or Device**

1. From the Home Page, turn the MENU knob to access the PHONE screen button, then press the MENU knob to select the PHONE screen button. If a device has been previously paired, the main Phone menu will be shown. If no devices have been paired, Step 2 can be skipped.
2. Turn the MENU knob and press to select Manage Phones.
3. Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the Pair screen button. A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN is used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the cell phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
5. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3. If a six-digit code is shown on the phone and the vehicle screen, confirm the codes are the same. The system recognizes the new connected phone after the pairing process is complete.
6. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
7. Repeat Steps 1–6 to pair additional phones or devices.

**Listing All Paired and Connected Phones**

1. To list all paired devices, turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button.
2. Turn the MENU knob and press to select Manage Phones.

**Deleting a Paired Phone**

1. From the Home Page, turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button or press the PHONE button on the faceplate.

2. Turn the MENU knob and press to select Manage Phones.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the phone to be deleted.
4. Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the DELETE screen button to delete the highlighted device.
5. A confirmation screen is displayed. Press the button just below the DELETE screen button to confirm deletion.

**Connecting to a Different Phone**

1. From the Home Page, turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button or press the PHONE button on the faceplate.
2. Turn the MENU knob and press to select Manage Phones.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the phone to be connected.
4. Press the button just below the Connect screen button to connect to the highlighted device.

## Phone Menu

Once a phone is connected and selected, the following may display:

**Recent Calls :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight Recent Calls and press to select.

**Contacts :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight Contacts and press to select.

**Keypad :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight Keypad and press to select.

**Active Call :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight Active Call and press to select and display the active call screen.

**Manage Phones :** Turn the MENU knob to highlight Manage Phones and press to select.

## Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

For cell phones that support the Contacts and Recent Calls feature, the Bluetooth system can use the contacts stored on your cell phone to make calls. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide or contact your wireless provider to find out if this feature is supported by your phone.

If the phone prompts to allow phone book download during the pairing process, select Always Accept and Allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.

When a cell phone supports the phone book feature, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu allows you to access the phone book stored in the cell phone to make a call.

The Recent Calls menu allows you to access the phone numbers from the Incoming Calls, Outgoing Calls, and Missed Calls menus on the cell phone to make a call.

To make a call using the Contacts menu :

1. Turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button, or press the PHONE button on the faceplate.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight Contacts and press to select.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the letter group and press to select.
4. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the contact and press to select.
5. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the desired number, then press the MENU knob to call the contact.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu :

1. From the Home Page, turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight Recent Calls and press to select.

   If necessary, select between Missed, Recent, and Sent calls by turning the MENU knob to highlight the desired screen button, then pressing the MENU knob to select it.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the contact or the phone number.
4. Press the MENU knob to call the contact.

## Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call:

1. Turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button.
2. Turn the MENU knob and press to select Keypad.
3. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the first digit and press to select. Continue this process through the number.

   To call, press the area just above the chrome bar and below the CALL screen button.

## Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

### Accepting a Call

To accept a call, do one of the following :

- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the ANSWER screen button.
- Press on the steering wheel controls.

### Declining a Call

To decline a call, do one of the following :

- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the IGNORE screen button.
- Press on the steering wheel controls or do nothing.

### Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

#### Accepting a Call Waiting Call

To accept a call waiting call, do one of the following :

- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the SWITCH screen button.
- Press on the steering wheel controls.

#### Declining a Call Waiting Call

To decline a call waiting call, do one of the following:

- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the IGNORE screen button.
- Press on the steering wheel controls or do nothing.

### Ending a Call

To end a call, do one of the following :

- Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the END screen button.
- Press on the steering wheel controls.

### Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Press the area just above the chrome bar and below the KEYPAD screen button.
2. Turn the MENU knob to highlight the first digit and press to select.

If not initially in the phone application, from the Home Page, turn the MENU knob, then press to select the PHONE screen button.

From the PHONE main menu, turn the MENU knob to highlight “Active Call” and press to select.

## Bluetooth (Voice Recognition)

### Using Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press on the steering wheel. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say “Help” while you are in a voice recognition menu.

### Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled cell phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the cell phone. If a Bluetooth phone is not connected, calls can be made using OnStar Hands-Free Calling, if available. See *OnStar Overview* ⇨ *411*.

### Pairing a Phone

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Pair.” The system responds with instructions and a four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN). The PIN is used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the cell phone that you want to pair. For help with this process, see your cell phone manufacturer's user guide.
5. Locate the device named “Your Vehicle” in the list on the cell phone. Follow the instructions on the cell phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3. The system may respond with a six digit code to be confirmed on the cell phone (instead of entering a four-digit code). Check that the same digits are shown on the cell phone and say "Yes" to confirm. Select Confirm on the cell phone as well. After the PIN is successfully entered, the system prompts you to provide a name for the paired cell phone. This name will be used to indicate which phones are paired and connected to the vehicle. The system responds with “<Phone name> has been successfully paired” after the pairing process is complete.
6. Repeat Steps 1−5 to pair additional phones.

### Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

The system can list all cell phones paired to it. If a paired cell phone is also connected to the vehicle, the system responds with “is connected” after that phone name.

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “List.”

### Deleting a Paired Phone

If the phone name to delete is unknown, see “Listing All Paired and Connected Phones.”

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Delete.” The system asks for which phone to delete.
4. Say the name of the phone to delete.

### Connecting to a Different Phone

To connect to a different cell phone, the Bluetooth system looks for the next available cell phone in the order in which all available cell phones were paired. This may need to be repeated depending on how many cell phones have been connected.

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Change phone.”
   - If another cell phone is found, the response will be “<Phone name> is now connected.”

- If another cell phone is not found, the original phone remains connected.

## Storing and Deleting Phone Numbers

The following commands are used to delete and store phone numbers.

**Store :** This command will store a phone number or a group of numbers as a name tag.

**Digit Store :** This command allows a phone number to be stored as a name tag by entering the digits one at a time.

**Delete :** This command is used to delete individual name tags.

**Delete All Name Tags :** This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the Destinations Directory.

### Using the "Store" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Ready," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Store."
3. Say the entire phone number or a group of digits all at once with no pauses, then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

### Using the "Digit Store" Command

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say "Correction" at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the digits recognized by the system, say "Verify" at any time.

1. Press . The system responds "Ready," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Digit Store."
3. Say each digit, one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say "Store," and then follow the directions given by the system to save a name tag for this number.

### Using the "Delete" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Ready," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Delete."
3. Say the name tag you want to delete.

### Using the "Delete All Name Tags" Command

This command deletes all stored name tags in the Hands-Free Calling Directory and the Destinations Directory.

To delete all name tags:

1. Press . The system responds "Ready," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Delete all nametags."

## Listing Stored Numbers

The list command will list all the stored numbers and name tags.

### Using the "List" Command

1. Press . The system responds "Ready," followed by a tone.
2. Say "Directory."

3. Say “Hands-Free Calling.”
4. Say “List.”

## Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

**Dial or Call :** The dial or call command can be used interchangeably to dial a phone number or a stored name tag.

**Digit Dial :** This command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time.

**Redial :** This command is used to dial the last number used on the cell phone.

### Using the “Dial” or “Call” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call.”
3. Say the entire number without pausing or say the name tag.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

### Calling 911 Emergency (U.S. and Canada)

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call.”
3. Say “911.”
4. Say “Dial” or “Call.”

### Calling 066 Emergency (Mexico)

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call.”
3. Say “066.”
4. Say “Dial” or “Call.”

### Using the “Digit Dial” Command

The digit dial command allows a phone number to be dialed by entering the digits one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone.

If an unwanted number is recognized by the system, say “Correction” at any time to clear the last number.

To hear all of the numbers recognized by the system, say “Verify” at any time.

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Digit Dial.”
3. Say each digit, one at a time. After each digit is entered, the system repeats back the digit it heard followed by a tone. After the last digit has been entered, say “Dial.”

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

### Using the “Redial” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Redial.” The system dials the last number called from the connected cell phone.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

## Receiving a Call

When an incoming call is received, the audio system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

- Press to answer the call.
- Press to ignore a call.

## Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

- Press to answer an incoming call when another call is active. The original call is placed on hold.
- Press again to return to the original call.
- To ignore the incoming call, no action is required.
- Press to disconnect the current call and switch to the call on hold.

## Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the cell phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier.

1. While on a call, press .
2. Say “Three-way call.”
3. Use the “Dial” or “Call” command to dial the number of the third party to be called.
4. Once the call is connected, press to link all callers together.

## Ending a Call

Press to end a call.

## Transferring a Call

Audio can be transferred between the Bluetooth system and the cell phone.

The cell phone must be paired and connected with the Bluetooth system before a call can be transferred. The connection process can take up to two minutes after the ignition is turned to ON/RUN/START.

### To Transfer Audio from the Bluetooth System to a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio in the vehicle:

1. Press .
2. Say “Transfer call.”

### To Transfer Audio to the Bluetooth System from a Cell Phone

During a call with the audio on the cell phone, press . The audio transfers to the vehicle. If the audio does not transfer to the vehicle, use the audio transfer feature on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide for more information.

## Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the cell phone. See your cell phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the cell phone supports this feature.

To access contacts stored in the cell phone:

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Bluetooth.”
3. Say “Voice.” The system responds “OK, accessing <phone name>.”

The cell phone's normal prompt messages will go through their cycle according to the phone's operating instructions.

### Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The Bluetooth system can send numbers and the numbers stored as name tags during a call. You can use this feature when calling a menu-driven phone system. Account numbers can also be stored for use.

#### Sending a Number or Name Tag During a Call

1. Press . The system responds “Ready,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial.”
3. Say the number or name tag to send.

### Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the in-vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained indefinitely. This includes all phone pairing information. For information on how to delete this information, see “Deleting a Paired Phone.”

## Trademarks and License Agreements

### FCC Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

iPod and iPhone are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Fees and Taxes: Subscription fee, taxes, one time activation fee, and other fees may apply. Subscription fee is consumer only. All fees and programming subject to change. Subscriptions subject to Customer Agreement available at www.siriusxm.com. SiriusXM® service only available in the 48 contiguous United States and Canada.

In Canada: Some deterioration of service may occur in extreme northern latitudes. This is beyond the control of SiriusXM® Satellite Radio.

It is prohibited to copy, decompile, disassemble, reverse engineer, hack, manipulate, or otherwise make available any technology or software incorporated in receivers compatible with the SiriusXM® Satellite Radio System or that support the SiriusXM website, the Online Service or any of its content. Furthermore, the AMBER voice compression software included in this product is protected by intellectual property rights including patent rights, copyrights, and trade secrets of Digital Voice Systems, Inc.

General Requirements:

1. A License Agreement from SiriusXM is required for any product that incorporates SiriusXM Technology and/or for use of any of the SiriusXM marks to be manufactured, distributed, or marketed in the SiriusXM service Area.
2. For products to be distributed, marketed, and/or sold in Canada, a separate agreement is required with Canadian Satellite Radio Inc. (operating as SiriusXM Canada).

## Bluetooth

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and andy use of such marks by General Motors is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

# Climate Controls

**Climate Control Systems**
Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base) . . . . . 203
Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel) . . . . 207

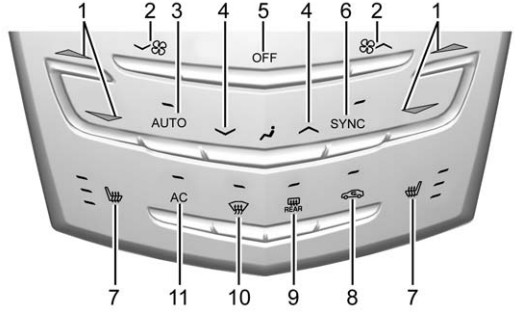
**Air Vents**
Air Vents . . . . . 212

**Maintenance**
Passenger Compartment Air Filter . . . . . 213
Service . . . . . 213

# Climate Control Systems

## Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)

If equipped with this system, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.




1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
4. Air Delivery Mode Control
5. OFF (Fan)
6. SYNC (Synchronized Temperature)
7. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
8. Recirculation
9. Rear Window Defogger
10. Defrost
11. AC (Air Conditioning)

**Climate Control Function With Stop/Start (If Equipped)**

The climate control system depends on other vehicle systems for heat and power input. The climate control system will balance stop/start efficiency with air conditioning comfort and defog operation. Certain climate control settings can result in fewer autostops.

The following are climate control settings that result in fewer autostops:

- The defrost mode.
- High fan speed settings.
- Extreme temperature settings.

**Automatic Operation**

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on or AUTO is displayed on the screen, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and the display will show the selected settings.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

**OFF (Fan) :** Press to turn the fan on or off. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.

**△ or ▽ (Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls) :** The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature.

**SYNC (Synchronized Temperature) :** Press SYNC to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. The SYNC indicator will be lit. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the temperatures are unlinked and the SYNC indicator turns off.

**Manual Operation**

**∨ or ∧ (Fan Control) :** Press the fan control buttons to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the buttons to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan, press OFF.

**(Air Delivery Mode Control) :** Press the air delivery mode buttons to change the direction of the airflow. Selecting any of the air delivery modes cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

**(Vent) :** Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

**(Bi-Level) :** Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

**(Floor) :** Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air to the windshield and side windows.

**(Defog) :** Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, side windows and floor outlets. Some air may go to the rear floor outlets.

**(Defrost) :** Press the button to turn on or off. This clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield, and side windows.

**A/C (Air Conditioning) :** Press to turn the air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. Outside temperatures below freezing may also prevent the air conditioner from running.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to defog the windshield faster.

**Automatic Air Recirculation :** When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

**(Recirculation) :** Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or reduce the outside air and odors that may enter.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

**Auto Defog :** The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Rear Window Defogger

**REAR (Rear Window Defogger) :** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

The upper gridlines on the rear window are antenna lines and are not intended to heat when the defogger is activated.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window defogger button is on. They help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

**Caution**

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect the

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

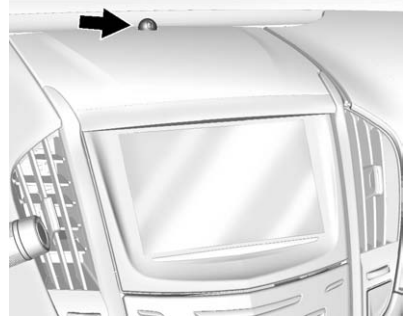
**or (Driver and Passenger Heated Seats, If Equipped) :** Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62*.

The vehicle also has auto heated seats that turn on when the vehicle is on. The seats will activate at the level required by the vehicle's interior temperature. To turn off, press or . The auto heated seats can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148* and *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62*.

**Remote Start Climate Control Operation :** If equipped with the remote vehicle start feature, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

## Sensors



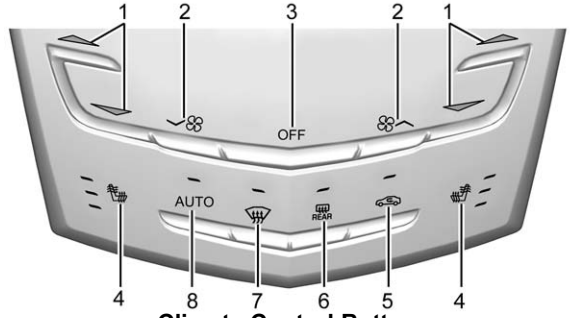
The solar sensor monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

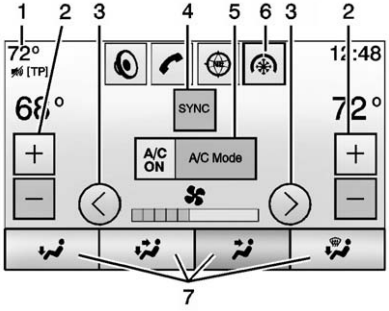
## Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)

The climate control buttons and the touch screen are used to adjust the heating, cooling, and ventilation.




**Climate Control Buttons**

1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. Fan Control
3. OFF (Fan)
4. Driver and Passenger Heated Seats (If Equipped)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger
7. Defrost
8. AUTO (Automatic Operation)



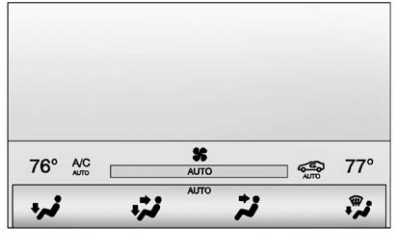

**Climate Touch Screen Controls**

1. Outside Air Temperature Display
2. Driver and Passenger Temperature Displays
3. Fan Control
4. SYNC (Synchronized Temperature)
5. A/C Mode (Air Conditioning)
6. Climate Control Selection (Application Tray Button)
7. Air Delivery Mode Control

**Climate Control Touch Screen**

The fan, air delivery mode, A/C mode, driver and passenger temperatures, and SYNC settings can be controlled by pressing CLIMATE on the infotainment home screen or the climate button in the touch screen application tray. A selection can then be made on the front climate control page displayed. See the infotainment manual.

**Climate Control Status Screen**




The climate control status screen appears briefly when the climate control buttons on the faceplate are adjusted. The air delivery mode can be adjusted on the climate control status screen.

**Climate Control Function With Stop/Start (If Equipped)**

The climate control system depends on other vehicle systems for heat and power input. The climate control system will balance stop/start efficiency with air conditioning comfort and defog operation. Certain climate control settings can result in fewer auto stops.

The following are climate control settings that result in fewer auto stops:

- The defrost mode.
- High fan speed settings.
- Extreme temperature settings.

For maximum air conditioning comfort, use the stop/start disable switch. See “Auto Engine Stop/Start” under *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *232*.

**Automatic Operation**

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the indicator light is on or AUTO is displayed on the touch screen, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the auto indicator turns off and the display will show the selected settings. Auto operation can be turned off individually for climate settings.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

English units can be changed to metric units through the instrument cluster. See “Settings” under *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*.

**OFF (Fan) :** Press to turn the fan on or off. The temperature control and air delivery mode can still be adjusted.

**△ or ▽ (Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls) :** The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Press to increase or decrease the temperature. Press and hold to rapidly increase or decrease the temperature. The driver and passenger temperatures can also be adjusted by pressing the controls on the touch screen.

**SYNC (Synchronized Temperature) :** Press SYNC on the touch screen to link all climate zone settings to the driver settings. Adjust the driver side temperature control to change the linked temperature. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC button is displayed when the temperatures are unlinked.

**Manual Operation**

**∨ or ∧ (Fan Control) :** Press the fan control buttons or the touch screen fan control to increase or decrease the fan speed. Press and hold the buttons or the touch screen control to adjust speed more quickly. The fan speed setting displays. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation. To turn off the fan and climate control system, press and hold the fan down button or the touch screen fan control until it is off.

**Air Delivery Mode Control :** Press the CLIMATE touch screen button to select climate control. Press the air delivery mode touch screen button to change the direction of the airflow. The selected air delivery mode button is lit. Pressing any of the air delivery buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and

the direction of the airflow can be controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one of the following:

**(Vent) :** Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

**(Bi-Level) :** Air is divided between the instrument panel outlets and the floor outlets.

**(Floor) :** Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air to the windshield and side windows.

**(Defog) :** Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield, side windows, and floor outlets. Some air may go to the rear floor outlets.

**(Defrost) :** Press the button to turn on or off. This clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield and side windows.

**A/C Mode (Air Conditioning) :** Press the A/C Mode touch screen control to turn the automatic air conditioning on or off. If the fan is turned off, the air conditioner will not run. Outside temperatures below freezing may also prevent the air conditioner from running.

Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs as needed.

**Automatic Air Recirculation :** When the AUTO indicator light is on, the air is automatically recirculated as needed to help quickly cool the inside of the vehicle.

**(Recirculation) :** Press to alternate between recirculating air inside the vehicle or pulling in outside air. The indicator light on the button is lit when recirculation mode is active. This helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or reduce the outside air and odors that may enter.

Pressing this button cancels automatic recirculation. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation; recirculation runs automatically as needed.

Manual recirculation mode is not available when in Defrost or Defog modes.

**Auto Defog :** The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. If the climate control system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation. To turn Auto Defog off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Rear Window Defogger

**REAR (Rear Window Defogger) :** Press to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window defogger is on.

The upper gridlines on the rear window are antenna lines and are not intended to heat when the defogger is activated.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window defogger button is on. They help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

The rear window defogger can be set to automatic operation. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*. When auto rear defog is selected, the rear window defogger turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 4 °C (40 °F) and below. The auto rear defogger turns off automatically.

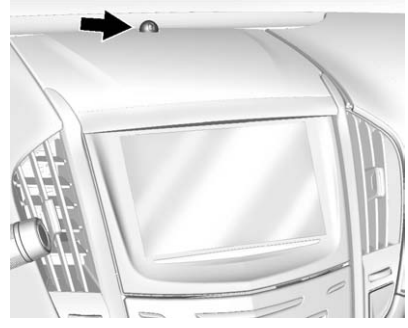
| Caution |
| --- |
| Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windshield and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window defogger grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. |

**or (Driver and Passenger Heated Seats, If Equipped) :** Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seatback. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *62*.

**Remote Start Climate Control Operation :** If equipped with the remote vehicle start feature, the climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *37*.

The rear window defogger turns on if it is cold outside.

## Sensor



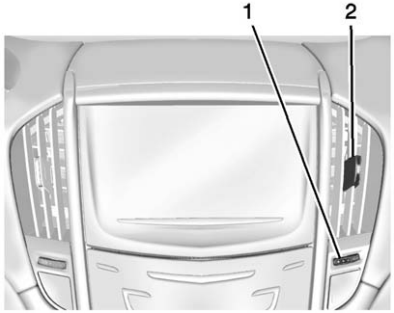
The solar sensor monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

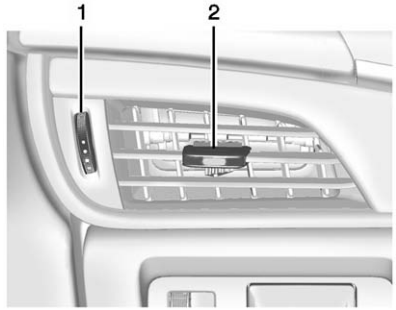
If the sensor is covered, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

# Air Vents

Adjustable air vents are in the center and on the side of the instrument panel.




Use the thumbwheels (1) near the air vents to open or close off the airflow.




Move the slats (2) to change the direction of the airflow.

Additional air vents are beneath the windshield and the driver side and passenger side door windows. These are fixed and cannot be adjusted.

**Operation Tips**

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.
- Do not attach any devices to the air vent slats. This restricts airflow and may cause damage to the air vents.

# Maintenance

## Passenger Compartment Air Filter

The filter reduces dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle. The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

See your dealer regarding replacement of the filter.

## Service

All vehicles have a label underhood that identifies the refrigerant used in the vehicle. The refrigerant system should only be serviced by trained and certified technicians. The air conditioning evaporator should never be repaired or replaced by one from a salvage vehicle.
It should only be replaced by a new evaporator to ensure proper and safe operation.

During service, all refrigerants should be reclaimed with proper equipment. Venting refrigerants directly to the atmosphere is harmful to the environment and may also create unsafe conditions based on inhalation, combustion, frostbite, or other health-based concerns.

# Driving and Operating


## Driving Information
Distracted Driving . . . . . 215
Defensive Driving . . . . . 216
Drunk Driving . . . . . 216
Control of a Vehicle . . . . . 216
Braking . . . . . 216
Steering . . . . . 217
Off-Road Recovery . . . . . 217
Loss of Control . . . . . 218
Track Events and Competitive Driving . . . . . 218
Driving on Wet Roads . . . . . 222
Hill and Mountain Roads . . . . . 223
Winter Driving . . . . . 224
If the Vehicle Is Stuck . . . . . 225
Vehicle Load Limits . . . . . 226

## Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In . . . . . 229
Carbon Fiber . . . . . 230
Ignition Positions . . . . . 230
Starting the Engine . . . . . 232
Engine Heater . . . . . 234
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) . . . . . 235
Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission) . . . . . 235
Shifting out of Park . . . . . 236
Parking . . . . . 237
Parking over Things That Burn . . . . . 237

## Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust . . . . . 238
Running the Vehicle While Parked . . . . . 238

## Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission . . . . . 239
Manual Mode . . . . . 241

## Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission . . . . . 242
Active Rev Match . . . . . 244

## Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive . . . . . 245

## Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . . . 245
Parking Brake (Electric) . . . . . 246
Parking Brake (Manual) . . . . . 248
Brake Assist . . . . . 249
Hill Start Assist (HSA) . . . . . 249

## Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control . . . . . 249
Driver Mode Control . . . . . 251
Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only) . . . . 252
Limited-Slip Rear Axle (Except LF4 and V-Series) . . . . . 255
Limited-Slip Rear Axle (LF4 and V-Series Only) . . . . 255

## Cruise Control
Cruise Control . . . . . 256
Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . . 258

## Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 266
Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing . . . . . 266
Assistance Systems for Driving . . . . . 270
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System . . . . . 270
Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System . . . . . 273
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) . . . . . 274
Lane Change Alert (LCA) . . . . . 275
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) . . . . . 276
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) . . . . . 277

**Fuel**
Fuel . . . . . 279
California Fuel Requirements . . . . . 280
Fuels in Foreign Countries . . . 280
Fuel Additives . . . . . 280
Filling the Tank . . . . . 280
Filling a Portable Fuel Container . . . . . 283

**Trailer Towing**
General Towing Information . . . . . 284
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips . . . . . 284
Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series) . . . . . 286
Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine) . . . . . 288
Trailer Towing (Coupe and V-Series) . . . . . 288
Towing Equipment (Coupe and V-Series) . . . . . 288
Towing Equipment (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series) . . . . . 288

**Conversions and Add-Ons**
Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . . . 289

# Driving Information

## Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, always keep your eyes on the road, hands on the wheel, and mind on the drive.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

**⚠ Warning**

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Refer to the Infotainment manual and Infotainment section for more information on using that system, including pairing and using a cell phone

## Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. See *Safety Belts* ⇨ *65*.

- Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready.
- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

## Drunk Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a global tragedy.

**⚠ Warning**

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking.

Do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

## Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

## Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

# Steering

## Variable Effort Steering

Some vehicles have a steering system that varies the amount of effort required to steer the vehicle in relation to the speed of the vehicle.

The amount of steering effort required is less at slower speeds to make the vehicle more maneuverable and easier to park. At faster speeds, the steering effort increases to provide a sport-like feel to the steering. This provides maximum control and stability.

## Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

If steering assist is used for an extended period of time, power assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See specific vehicle steering messages under *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *136*.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

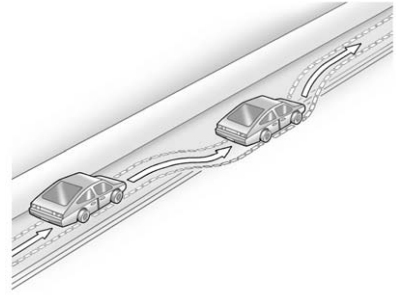
## Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

## Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

# Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

## Loss of Control

### Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.
- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

## Track Events and Competitive Driving

Competitive driving may affect the vehicle warranty. See the warranty manual before using the vehicle for competitive driving.

| Caution |
| --- |
| Low oil levels can damage the engine. If using the vehicle for competitive driving, the engine may use more oil than it would with normal use. Check the oil level often during competitive driving. |

Competitive Driving mode can be selected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*.

**Engine Oil**

2.0L Turbo (LTG) Engine Only:

- Keep the level at or near 1 L (1 qt) above the upper mark that shows the proper operating range on the engine oil dipstick.
- Use a 600 W fan in addition to the production option V03.
- Gasolines with a Pump Octane ((R+M)/2) of 99 or greater and ethanol content below 15% volume must be used for competitive driving to protect against engine damage. Colder spark plug ratings should also be used. Consult your dealer.

3.6L Non-Turbo (LGX) Engine Only:

- 3.6L Non-Turbo (LGX) Engine with Oil Cooler: Confirm the oil level is at the upper mark that shows the proper operating range on the engine oil dipstick
- 3.6L Non-Turbo (LGX) Engine without Oil Cooler: Do not drive in track events and competitive driving,

3.6L Twin Turbo (LF4) Engine Only:

- The twin turbo 3.6L engine (LF4) requires premium fuel, and comes standard with a 7 qt sump, integrated oil cooler, and other powertrain and powertrain cooling components in preparation for track use.

**Brake Fluid**

- Before racing, replace existing brake fluid with a qualified racing brake fluid from a sealed container. Brake fluid with a dry boiling point >279 °C (534 °F) is qualified. If racing brake fluid is used, replace it with GM approved brake fluid before driving on public roads. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.
- Do not use silicone-based fluids.

If racing brake fluid is in the vehicle and the age of the brake fluid is over a month old or unknown, replace the brake fluid between racing/closed track driving.

**Caution**

Failure to change the brake fluid and transfer case fluid after any performance or race track driving could result in damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have the brake fluid and transfer case fluid changed by your dealer after any performance or race track driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

## Brake Burnishing

For vehicles equipped with front Brembo® brake systems:

Base Vehicles Only: Performance/racing brake pads are required prior to racing or closed track driving. Vehicles with option code Y4Q have performance brake pads.

New brake pads must be burnished before racing or other competitive driving.

**Caution**

Performing the brake burnish procedure on a base brake system can result in brake damage.

**Caution**

The new vehicle break-in period should be completed before performing the brake burnish procedure, otherwise damage may occur to the powertrain/engine. See *New Vehicle Break-In* ⇨ *229*.

**Caution**

Brake pedal fade will occur during any track burnish procedure and can cause brake pedal travel and

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

force to increase. This could extend stopping distance until the brakes are fully burnished.

When this procedure is performed as instructed, it will not damage the brakes. The brake pads will smoke and produce an odor. The braking force and pedal travel may increase. After the procedure, the brake pads may appear white at the rotor contact.

Perform this procedure only on dry pavement, in a safe manner, and in compliance with all local and state ordinances/laws regarding motor vehicle operation.

**Brake Burnish Procedure (V-Series and Y4Q only)**

1. Apply the brakes 25 times starting at 100 km/h (60 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph) while decelerating at 0.4 g. This is a medium brake application. Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between applying the brakes. This first step may be skipped if there are more than 320 km (200 mi) on the brake pads.
2. Repeatedly apply the brakes from 100 km/h (60 mph) to 25 km/h (15 mph) while decelerating at 0.8 g. This is a hard brake application, without activating the Antilock Brake System (ABS). Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between stops. Repeat until the brake pedal travel starts to increase. Depending on conditions, this should take no longer than 25 brake applications.
3. Cool down: Drive at 100 km/h (60 mph) for approximately 15 km (10 mi) without using the brakes.
4. Apply the brakes 25 times from 100 km/h (60 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph) while decelerating at 0.4 g. This is a medium brake application. Drive for at least 1 km (0.6 mi) between applications.

**Axle Fluid**

Axles must have 885 km (500 mi) before being used in track driving.

The front, if equipped with AWD, and rear axle fluid temperatures may be higher than when driving in severe conditions. Drain and refill with new fluid after the first racing or competitive driving event, and then after every 24 hours of racing or competitive driving. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

| Caution |
| --- |
| During a first time track or racing event, high axle temperatures can occur. Damage could be caused to the axle and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not drive as long or as fast the first time the vehicle is driven on the track or raced. |

- The axle lubricant should be replaced with new lubricant.
- Additional cooling capacity is also required for continuous competitive driving.

**Track Battery**

If equipped, this is a lightweight, low power battery for track use only. Remove after each event.

Only use this battery when temperatures are above freezing.

Store in a cool, dry location. Charge periodically to keep the state of charge from getting too low.
A battery tender can be used.

When installing or removing the track battery, steps must be followed to calibrate the electronic throttle control. See *Battery - North America* ⇨ *316*.

**Wheel Alignment (V-Series Only)**

Wheel alignment suggested specs for track use:

- Front: -2.0 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe
- Rear: -1.7 deg camber, 0.2 deg total toe

## V-Series Vehicles Equipped With the Original Equipment Tires

Follow the requirements and recommendations for tire inflation pressures while driving on various types of tracks. This helps to achieve a well-balanced vehicle and enhance tire traction performance. Use good judgment to determine the appropriate inflation pressure and speeds for the track configuration and environmental conditions. Contact the tire manufacturer if further assistance is needed.

## Inflation Pressure Guidelines

Tire pressures affect vehicle handling and tire life, and should be adjusted for various types of track courses. Inspect the tires prior to every track session. Track driving will reduce the tire tread life.

**⚠ Warning**

Operating the vehicle at high speeds can be dangerous. Improper tire inflation pressure can put additional strain on the tires and can cause a sudden failure. Make sure the tires are in excellent condition, and use the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load and track or course.

**⚠ Warning**

Track courses put high loads on tires operating at high speed, which can lead to tire failure if not inflated properly.

**Tracks with Sustained High-Speed Operation on Banked Turns**

(e.g., Daytona International Speedway, Indianapolis Motor Speedway, or similar)

Load Limit: Limit the vehicle to the driver and one passenger, with no additional cargo.

Tire Pressure Requirement: Inflate tires to no less than 300 kPa (44 psi) cold.

**Tracks with Combined High-Speed and High-Load Corners**

(e.g., Nurburgring Nordschliefe, Spa Francorchamps, or similar)

Load Limit: Limit the vehicle to the driver and one passenger, with no additional cargo.

Tire Pressure Requirement: Inflate tires to no less than 260 kPa (38 psi) cold and limit to 230 km/h (143 mph) until 290 kPa (42 psi) is reached.

**Road/Street Courses**

(e.g., Virginia International Raceway, Road Atlanta, or similar)

Load Limit: Limit the vehicle to the driver and one passenger, with no additional cargo.

**Tire Pressure Recommendation:**

Hot: Target hot tire pressures to 270-280 kPa (39-41 psi). This is the stable tire pressure reached after approximately 15 minutes of operation at maximum driver effort.

Cold: This value will vary based on driving style, track, temperature, and weather conditions.

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

## Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

**⚠ Warning**

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

### Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

### Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires* ⇨ *332*.
- Turn off cruise control.

## Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

**⚠ Warning**

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

**⚠ Warning**

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Drive at speeds that keep the vehicle in its own lane. Do not swing wide or cross the center line.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (e.g., stalled car, accident).
- Pay attention to special road signs (e.g., falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

# Winter Driving

## Driving on Snow or Ice

Snow or ice between the tires and the road creates less traction or grip, so drive carefully. Wet ice can occur at about 0 °C (32 °F) when freezing rain begins to fall. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated.

**For Slippery Road Driving:**

- Accelerate gently. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick.
- Turn on Traction Control. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves vehicle stability during hard stops, but the brakes should be applied sooner than when on dry pavement. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *245*.
- Allow greater following distance and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.
- Turn off cruise control.

## Blizzard Conditions

Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. If possible, use Roadside Assistance. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

**⚠ Warning**

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in snow:

- Clear snow from the base of the vehicle, especially any blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the vehicle side that is away from the wind, to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to circulate the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems.”

For more information about CO, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*.

To save fuel, run the engine for short periods to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and partially close the window. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes time for help to arrive, when running the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible, to save fuel.

## If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*.

**⚠ Warning**

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

### Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions

causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *365*.

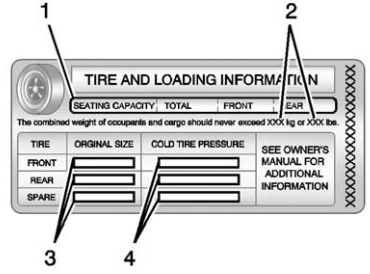
## Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo, and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on the vehicle may show how much weight it may properly carry: the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification label.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also reduce stopping distance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

### Tire and Loading Information Label




**Label Example**

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The Tire and Loading Information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (1), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (2) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the tire size of the original

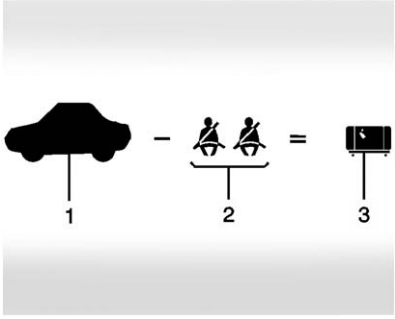
equipment tires (3) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (4). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires* ⇨ *332* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

There is also important loading information on the Certification label. It may show the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axle. See “Certification Label” later in this section.

**“Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–**

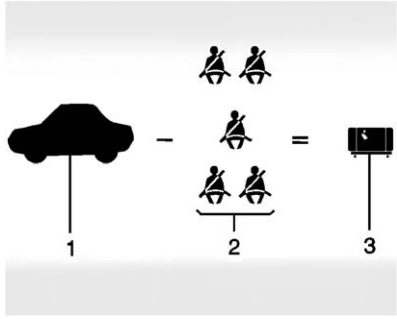
1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.”

See *Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)* ⇨ *286* or *Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine)* ⇨ *288* or *Trailer Towing (Coupe and V-Series)* ⇨ *288* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules, and trailering tips.



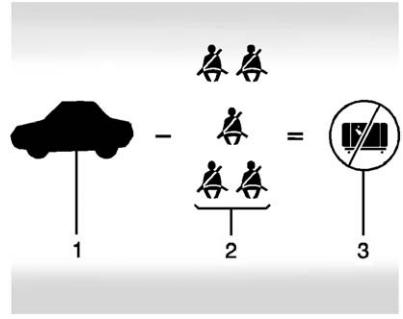

**Example 1**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).




**Example 2**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).



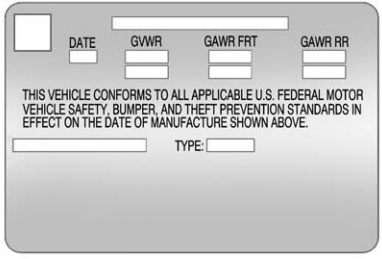

**Example 3**

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined

weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

**Certification Label**




**Label Example**

A vehicle-specific Certification label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar). The label may show the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo.

**⚠ Warning**

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

# Starting and Operating

## New Vehicle Break-In

Follow these recommended guidelines during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi) of driving this vehicle. Parts have a break-in period and performance will be better in the long run.

For the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi):

- Avoid full throttle starts and abrupt stops.
- Do not exceed 4000 engine rpm.
- Avoid driving at any one constant speed, fast or slow.
- Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle when the engine speed will exceed 4000 rpm.
- Do not let the engine labor. Never lug the engine in high gear at low speeds. With a manual transmission, shift to the

next lower gear. This rule applies at all times, not just during the break-in period.

- Check engine oil with every refueling and add if necessary. Oil and fuel consumption may be higher than normal during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi).
- New brake linings also need a break-in period. Avoid making hard stops during the first 322 km (200 mi). This is recommended every time brake linings are replaced.

## Carbon Fiber

This vehicle may be equipped with carbon fiber parts. Dealer-installed accessories may also contain carbon fiber.

**⚠ Warning**

The exposed edges of carbon fiber parts can be sharp when damaged. You or others could be injured. Use caution when

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

washing the vehicle, coming in contact with damaged carbon fiber parts, or removing these parts. See your dealer for replacement.

## Ignition Positions

The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with pushbutton start.

Pressing the button cycles it through three modes: ACC/ACCESSORY, ON/RUN/START, and Stopping the Engine/OFF.

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate. If the pushbutton start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the Keyless Access system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31*.

To shift out of P (Park), the vehicle must be in ON/RUN/START and the brake pedal must be applied.

**Stopping the Engine/OFF (No Indicator Lights) :** When the vehicle is stopped, press the ENGINE START/STOP button once to turn the engine off.

If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

**Automatic Transmission**

If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to ACC/ ACCESSORY and display a message in the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Transmission Messages* ⇨ *147*. When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will switch to OFF.

**Manual Transmission**

If the vehicle is stationary, the ignition will turn OFF, and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *235*.

The vehicle may have an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the vehicle is switched to OFF and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases. The steering column lock may not release with the wheels turned off center. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.

**⚠ Warning**

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/ STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice within five seconds.

**ACC/ACCESSORY (Amber Indicator Light) :** This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in ACC/ACCESSORY.

The ignition will switch from ACC/ ACCESSORY to OFF after five minutes to prevent battery rundown.

**ON/RUN/START (Green Indicator Light) :** This mode is for driving and starting. With the ignition off, and the brake pedal applied, pressing the button once will place the ignition system in ON/RUN/START. Once engine cranking begins, release the button. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *232*. The ignition will then remain in ON/RUN/START.

**Service Only Mode**

This power mode is available for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes. With the vehicle off, and the brake pedal not applied, pressing and holding the button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Service Only Mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in ON/RUN/START, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Service Only Mode. Push the button again to turn the vehicle off.

## Starting the Engine

Place the transmission in the proper gear.

**Caution**

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *289*.

### Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

**Caution**

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

### Manual Transmission

The shift lever should be in Neutral and the parking brake engaged. Hold the clutch pedal down to the floor and start the engine.

**Starting Procedure (Keyless Access)**

1. With the Keyless Access system, the RKE transmitter must be in the vehicle. Press ENGINE START/STOP with the brake pedal applied. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the button.

   The idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it.

   If the RKE transmitter is not in the vehicle, if there is interference, or the RKE battery is low, the Driver Information Center (DIC) will display a message. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *31* and *Key and Lock Messages* ⇨ *139*.

**Caution**

Cranking the engine for long periods of time, by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the cranking motor, and drain the battery. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to let the cranking motor cool down.

2. If the engine does not start after five to 10 seconds, especially in very cold weather (below −18 °C or 0 °F), it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you press ENGINE START/STOP, for up to a maximum of 15 seconds. Wait at least 15 seconds between each try, to allow the cranking motor to cool down. When the engine starts, let go of the button and the accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently until the oil warms up and lubricates all moving parts.

## Stop/Start System

**⚠ Warning**

Exiting the vehicle without first shifting into P (Park) may cause the vehicle to move. You or others may be injured. Because the vehicle has the auto engine stop/start feature, the vehicle's engine might seem to be shut off; however, once the brake pedal is released, the engine will start up again.

Shift to P (Park) and turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF, before exiting the vehicle.

The vehicle may have a fuel saving stop/start system to shut off the engine and help conserve fuel.

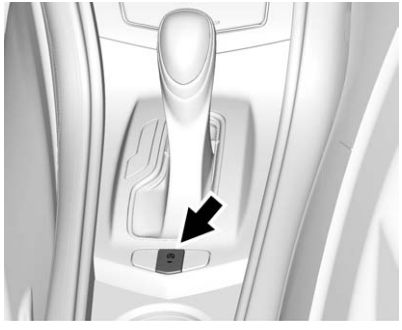
### Auto Engine Stop/Start

When the brakes are applied and the vehicle is at a complete stop, the engine may turn off. When stopped, the tachometer displays AUTO STOP. See *Tachometer* ⇨ *117*. When the brake pedal is released or the accelerator pedal pushed, the engine will restart.

Auto Stop may be deactivated if:

- A minimum vehicle speed is not reached.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.
- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range, typically below -10 °C (14 °F) or above 50 °C (122 °F).
- The shift lever is in any gear other than D (Drive).
- The battery has been recently disconnected.
- The battery charge is low.

- The interior comfort level has not reached the required level for the climate control system or defog settings. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Base)* ⇨ *203* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System (Uplevel)* ⇨ *207*.
- The Auto Stop time is greater than two minutes.
- The Auto Stop disable switch has been pressed.



The automatic engine stop/start function can be disabled using the switch. The indicator on the switch will come on when the system is operational.

When Ⓐ comes on green in the instrument cluster, the system is active. The system is not active when it comes on white with a slash through it.

## Engine Heater

Vehicles with the engine coolant heater can use this option in cold weather conditions at or below −18 °C (0 °F) for easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up. Plug in the coolant heater at least four hours before starting your vehicle. An internal thermostat in the plug-end of the cord may exist which will prevent engine coolant heater operation at temperatures above −18 °C (0 °F).

### To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is clipped to the diagonal brace on the passenger side of the engine compartment.

   Check the heater cord for damage. If it is damaged, do not use it. See your dealer for a replacement. Inspect the cord for damage yearly.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

**⚠ Warning**

Improper use of the heater cord or an extension cord can damage the cord and may result in overheating and fire.

- Plug the cord into a three-prong electrical utility receptacle that is protected by a ground fault detection

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

function. An ungrounded outlet could cause an electric shock.

- Use a weatherproof, heavy-duty, 15 amp-rated extension cord if needed. Failure to use the recommended extension cord in good operating condition, or using a damaged heater or extension cord, could make it overheat and cause a fire, property damage, electric shock, and injury.
- Do not operate the vehicle with the heater cord permanently attached to the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

vehicle. Possible heater cord and thermostat damage could occur.

- While in use, do not let the heater cord touch vehicle parts or sharp edges. Never close the hood on the heater cord.
- Before starting the vehicle, unplug the cord, reattach the cover to the plug, and securely fasten the cord. Keep the cord away from any moving parts.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

Contact your dealer for information on how long to use the heater in your particular area.

## Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These accessories can be used after the engine is turned off:

- Audio system (up to 10 minutes or driver door is opened).
- Power windows, sunroof (if equipped), and power outlets (up to 10 minutes or any door is opened).

## Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)

Use this procedure to shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake.

   See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.

2. Move the shift lever into P (Park) by holding in the button on the shift lever and pushing the lever all the way toward the front of the vehicle.
3. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

4. Take the Remote Keyless Access (RKE) transmitter with you.

### Leaving the Vehicle with the Engine Running (Automatic Transmission)

**⚠ Warning**

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park).

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *235*. If you are towing a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) and the parking brake set. After shifting into P (Park), try to move the shift lever without first pushing the button on the shift lever.

If you can, the shift lever was not fully locked into P (Park).

### Torque Lock (Automatic Transmission)

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see "Shifting Into Park" listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, the vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

## Shifting out of Park

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic shift lock release system. The shift lock release is designed to prevent movement of the shift lever out of P (Park), unless the ignition is in ON/RUN/START and the brake pedal is applied.

The shift lock release is always functional except in the case of an uncharged or low voltage (less than 9 volt) battery.

If the vehicle has an uncharged battery or a battery with low voltage, try charging or jump starting the battery. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN/START.
3. Release the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.
4. Press the shift lever button.
5. Move the shift lever.

If unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. While holding down the brake pedal, press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever.

If the shift lever will not move from P (Park), consult your dealer or a professional towing service.

## Parking

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before getting out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse) if parking on a downhill slope. On a level surface or an uphill slope, use 1 (First) gear. Apply the parking brake. Turn the wheels toward the curb for a downhill slope, or away from the curb for an uphill slope. Once the shift lever has been placed into gear with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF, and release the clutch.

If parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

## Parking over Things That Burn

**⚠ Warning**

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

# Engine Exhaust

**⚠ Warning**

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

## Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *235* and *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*. If the vehicle has a manual transmission, see *Parking* ⇨ *237*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

# Automatic Transmission

**P :** This position locks the rear wheels. Use this position when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

**⚠ Warning**

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *235* and *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an electronic shift lock release system. Fully apply the regular brakes first and then press the shift lever button before shifting from P (Park) with the ignition in ON/RUN/START. If you cannot shift out of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. See *Shifting out of Park* ⇨ *236*.

**Caution**

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

**R :** Use this gear to back up.

At low vehicle speeds, R (Reverse) can be used to rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice, or sand without damaging the transmission. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *225*.

**N :** In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. You can also use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

**⚠ Warning**

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

**Caution**

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

**D :** This position is for normal driving. It provides the best fuel economy. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than 55 km/h (35 mph), push the accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 55 km/h (35 mph) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

  The transmission will shift down to a lower gear and have more power.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding; see “Skidding” under *Loss of Control* ⇨ *218*.

**Caution**

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

While in Sport or Track Mode, the vehicle monitors driving behavior, and automatically enables Performance Shift Features when spirited driving is detected. These features maintain lower transmission gears to increase available engine braking and improve acceleration response. The vehicle will exit these features and return to normal operation after a short period when no spirited driving is detected. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*.

The transmission will shift down a gear to help hold vehicle speed and reduce brake wear when:

- Driving on a steep descent.
- With the shift lever in D (Drive).
- Where frequent braking is required.

If the brake remains applied, the transmission will downshift until 3 (Third) gear is reached. If the brake is released for some time, the transmission will upshift a gear.
If the road levels out and the accelerator pedal is pressed, the transmission will upshift until the appropriate gear is reached.

## Manual Mode

### Driver Shift Control (DSC)

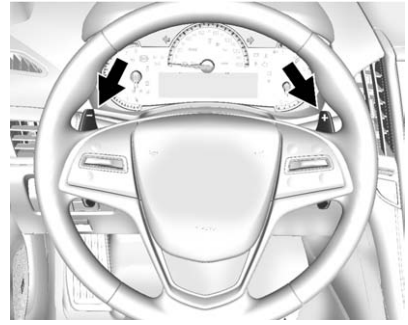
| Caution |
| --- |
| Driving with the engine at a high rpm without upshifting while using Driver Shift Control (DSC), could damage the vehicle. Always upshift when necessary while using DSC. |

Vehicles with DSC may either use the shift lever or the tap shift controls on the back of the steering wheel (if equipped) to manually shift the automatic transmission.

To use DSC using the shift lever:

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.
2. Move the shift lever forward to upshift or rearward to downshift.
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

### Tap Shift



If equipped, the tap shift controls are on the back of the steering wheel.

To use DSC using the tap shift controls:

1. Move the shift lever to the left from D (Drive) to M (Manual Mode). The transmission will be in Manual Mode and will hold the current gear.

2. Pull the control toward you to shift. Pull the left control to (−) downshift, and the right control to (+) upshift. To shift to the lowest available gear, press and hold the left control (−).
3. To cancel DSC, move the shift lever back to D (Drive).

Tap Shift Mode can also be used temporarily while driving in D (Drive). Pull either the (+) upshift or (−) downshift control.

To cancel Tap Shift Mode, hold the (+) upshift control for two seconds. If no action is taken, the vehicle returns to automatic shifting after a brief period of driving at a steady speed, or when the vehicle comes to a stop.

While using the DSC feature, the vehicle will have firmer, quicker shifting. This can be used for sport driving, climbing or descending hills, staying in gear longer, downshifting for more power, or engine braking.

The transmission will only allow shifting into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed and engine revolutions per minute (rpm). The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear if the engine rpm is too high.

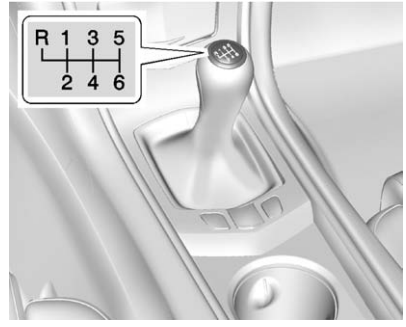
If shifting is prevented for any reason, a DIC message will appear. See *Transmission Messages* ⇨ *147*.

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, it is suggested to shift into second gear, or third gear as available. A higher gear allows the vehicle to gain more traction on slippery surfaces. See *Driver Mode Control* ⇨ *251*.

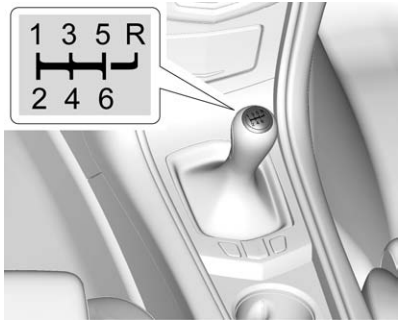
# Manual Transmission

If equipped, this is the shift pattern for the manual transmission.

**ATS**



**ATS-V**




**1 (First) :** Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal while pressing on the accelerator pedal.

After a complete stop, if it is hard to shift into 1 (First), let up on the clutch pedal, then press it back down and shift into 1 (First).

**2 (Second) :** Press the clutch pedal and let up on the accelerator pedal, then shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal while accelerating.

**3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) :** Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) the same as 2 (Second).

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to Neutral.

**Neutral :** Use this position when you start or idle the engine. The shift lever is in Neutral when it is centered in the shift pattern, not in any gear.

**R (Reverse) :** To back up, press down the clutch pedal, completely stop the vehicle, and shift into R (Reverse). Let up on the clutch pedal slowly while pressing the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ Warning**

If you skip a gear when downshifting, you could lose control of the vehicle. You could

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

injure yourself or others. Do not shift down more than one gear at a time when downshifting.

**Caution**

When downshifting, if more than one gear is skipped, or the engine is racing when the clutch pedal is released, the engine, clutch, driveshaft or transmission could be damaged.

## No Lift-Shift

On ATS-V vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, the vehicle can be shifted up a gear when the accelerator pedal is pressed to floor without being released. This allows for less power interruption and will improve acceleration times. This feature is available in all vehicle modes and is only active when the engine speed is greater than 2500 rpm.

## Active Rev Match

ATS–V vehicles equipped with a manual transmission have Active Rev Match (ARM). ARM aids in smoother shifting by matching the engine speed to the next selected gear. By monitoring shift lever and clutch operation, ARM adjusts engine speed to match a calibrated value based on gear selection. On upshifts and downshifts, engine speed will be increased and decreased to match vehicle road speed and transmission gear position. ARM is maintained for a few seconds between shifts, then deactivates if the shift is not completed.

The system is activated and deactivated by pressing either of the paddles on the steering wheel. The system must be activated with each new ignition cycle.

A gear indicator in the instrument cluster displays the current gear selected. ARM is also shown in the Performance View of the HUD:

- When ARM is activated, the gear number is amber.
- When ARM is deactivated, the gear number is white.
- If no gear number is displayed while the shift lever is in gear, service is required. ARM will be disabled, and the malfunction indicator lamp will be on. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121*. The clutch and manual transmission will continue to operate normally.

ARM will also:

- Be active above 14 km/h (9 mph).
- Match engine speed up to 6100 rpm.
- Not operate when the accelerator pedal is applied.
- Be disabled when the coolant temperature is below 0 °C (32 °F).

# Drive Systems

## All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature always send engine power to all four wheels. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

# Brakes

## Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself.
A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.

If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. See *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *124*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

### Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You may hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate. This is normal.

### Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

## Parking Brake (Electric)

**Automatic Transmission**

**Manual Transmission**

If equipped with an Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the switch is on the center console for manual transmission vehicles, or on the left side of the instrument panel for automatic transmission vehicles. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB when the engine is not running.

The system has a red parking brake status light and an amber parking brake warning light. See *Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *124* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *124*.

There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Center (DIC) messages. See *Brake System Messages* ⇨ *136*. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the red parking brake status light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

## EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Be sure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Lift up the EPB switch momentarily.

The red parking brake status light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the red parking brake status light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display. Release the EPB and try to apply it again. If the light does not come one, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the red parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *124*.

If the amber parking brake warning light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it up. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light remains on. If the amber parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held up. If the switch is held up until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

The vehicle may automatically apply the EPB in some situations when the vehicle is not moving. This is normal, and is done to periodically check the correct operation of the EPB system.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

## EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Place the ignition in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN/START position.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push down momentarily on the EPB switch.

The EPB is released when the red parking brake status light is off.

If the amber parking brake warning light is on, release the EPB by pushing down on the EPB switch and holding it down. Continue to hold the switch until the red parking brake status light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

**Caution**

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

### Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

The EPB can also be used to prevent roll back for vehicles with a manual transmission taking off on a hill. When no roll back is desired, an applied EPB will allow both feet to be used for the clutch and accelerator pedals in preparation for starting the vehicle moving in the intended direction. In this case, there is no need to push the switch to release the EPB.

If parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

## Parking Brake (Manual)

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push the parking brake pedal down.

If the ignition is on, the brake system warning light will come on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *123*.

**Caution**

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down, then push down momentarily on the parking brake pedal until you feel the pedal release. Slowly pull your foot up off the parking brake pedal. If the parking brake is not released when you begin to drive, the brake system warning light will be on and a chime will sound warning you that the parking brake is still on.

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on a hill, see *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *284*.

## Brake Assist

This vehicle has a brake assist feature designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The brake assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

## Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has an HSA feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade sufficient enough to activate HSA. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

# Ride Control Systems

## Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

### System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and StabiliTrak®, an electronic stability control system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

StabiliTrak activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. StabiliTrak selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the

vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or StabiliTrak begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *225* and “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.

The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when StabiliTrak is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.
4. Drive the vehicle.

If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

## Turning the Systems Off and On

The button for TCS and StabiliTrak is on the center console (ATS) or the steering wheel (ATS-V).

| Caution |
| --- |
| Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged. |

To turn off only TCS, press and release the button. The Traction Off light displays in the instrument cluster and the

appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *143*.

To turn TCS on again, press and release the button. The Traction Off light displayed in the instrument cluster will turn off.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when the button is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn off both TCS and StabiliTrak, press and hold the button until the Traction Off light and StabiliTrak OFF light come on and stay on in the instrument cluster. The appropriate DIC message displays. See *Ride Control System Messages* ⇨ *143*.

To turn TCS and StabiliTrak on again, press and release the button. The Traction Off light and StabiliTrak OFF light in the instrument cluster turn off.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. See *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *291*.

## Driver Mode Control

Driver Mode Control attempts to add a sportier feel, provide a more comfortable ride, or assist in different weather conditions or terrain. This system simultaneously changes the software calibration of various sub-systems. Depending on the option package, available features, and mode selected, the suspension, steering, and powertrain will change calibrations to achieve the desired mode characteristics. If the vehicle is equipped with Magnetic Ride Control, selecting the various Driver Modes adjusts the ride of the vehicle to enhance the ride performance for the road conditions and the selected mode.

The Driver Mode Control has three or four modes: Tour, Sport, Snow/Ice, and Track (LF4 Only). Snow/Ice mode is only available on automatic transmission vehicles. Press and release the MODE button (ATS) or press the ∧ or ∨ button (ATS/V) on the center console to activate the mode menu in the cluster. The first press of the button will show the current mode. Subsequent presses will scroll though the available modes. The Tour and Sport modes will feel similar on a smooth road. Select a new setting whenever driving conditions change.

### Tour Mode

Use for normal city and highway driving to provide a smooth, soft ride.

### Sport Mode

Use where road conditions or personal preference demand a more controlled response.

When selected, the Sport mode indicator will display in the Driver Information Center (DIC).

When in Sport or Track mode, the vehicle will shift automatically but may hold a lower gear longer than it would in the normal driving mode

based on braking, throttle input, and vehicle lateral acceleration. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *239*. The steering will change to provide more precise control. If the vehicle has Magnetic Ride Control, the suspension will change to provide better cornering performance.

Competitive Driving Mode can be accessed through this mode.

### Snow/Ice Mode

Use when more traction is needed during slippery conditions. The transmission will use 2 (Second) gear instead of 1 (First) gear when accelerating from a stop. The vehicle will upshift normally when the vehicle is moving.

For LF4 only, Snow/Ice mode will use a different accelerator pedal map to optimize traction on a slippery surface. The accelerator pedal will reduce engine torque at small pedal inputs. The transmission will also shift differently to assist in maintaining traction.

When selected, the Snow/Ice mode indicator will display in the DIC.

This feature is not intended for use when the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice, snow, or gravel. If the vehicle becomes stuck, see *If the Vehicle Is Stuck* ⇨ *225*.

### Track Mode (LF4 Only)

Use when maximum vehicle handling is desired. When selected, the Track Mode indicator will display in the DIC.

Accelerator pedal is adjusted to give maximum control during the highest level of spirited driving.

The automatic transmission and steering will function similar to Sport Mode.

The Magnetic Ride Control will be set to the optimum level for vehicle responsiveness.

Competitive Driving Mode can be accessed through this mode.

Use when driving on a closed race course or drag strip.

Vehicle systems are optimized for maximum track performance.

This mode allows entry to Performance Traction Management (PTM) in the Competitive Driving Mode.

## Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)

To select this optional handling mode, press the button quickly two times and the DIC will display the appropriate message. While in the Competitive Driving Mode, the traction off light and StabiliTrak OFF light will come on in the instrument cluster. TCS does not limit wheel spin, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (ELSD) allows increased vehicle agility, and more effort is required to turn the steering wheel. See “Limited–Slip Differential (LF4 and V-Series Only)” following. Adjust your driving accordingly.

Press the button again, or turn the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY and restart the vehicle, to turn TCS

back on. The traction off light and StabiliTrak OFF light will go out in the instrument cluster.

| Caution |
| --- |
| When traction control is turned off, or Competitive Driving Mode is active, it is possible to lose traction. |

## Performance Traction Management (V-Series Only)

Performance Traction Management (PTM) integrates the Traction Control, StabiliTrak, and Magnetic Ride Control systems to provide improved and consistent performance when cornering. The amount of available engine power is based on the mode selected, track conditions, driver skill, and the radius of each corner.

This light is on when the vehicle is in the PTM mode.

To select this optional handling mode, the vehicle mode must be Track. Then quickly press the TCS/StabiliTrak button on the center console two times. PERF TRAC 1 - WET ACTIVE HANDLING ON displays in the DIC.

When PTM is active, the up and down buttons will no longer change Drive Modes, but instead change PTM modes.

To select a mode while in PTM, press the Driver Mode Control/PTM buttons on the center console.

To experience the performance benefit of this system, after entering a curve and at the point where normal acceleration occurs, fully push the accelerator pedal. The PTM system will modify the level of engine power for a smooth and consistent corner exit.

The PTM system contains five modes. These modes are selected by pressing the Driver Mode Control/PTM buttons on the center console. Scroll up or down through modes 1-5 by pressing the MODE SELECT up and down button The following is a DIC display description and the recommended usage of each mode:

### PERF TRAC 1 – WET ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- Intended for all driver skill levels.
- Wet or damp conditions only — not intended for use in heavy rain or standing water.
- StabiliTrak is on and engine power is reduced based on conditions.

### PERF TRAC 2 – DRY ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- For use by less experienced drivers or while learning a new track.

- Dry conditions only.
- StabiliTrak is on and engine power is slightly reduced.

### PERF TRAC 3 – SPORT ACTIVE HANDLING ON

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than mode 2.
- StabiliTrak is on and more engine power is available than in mode 2.

### PERF TRAC 4 – SPORT ACTIVE HANDLING OFF

- For use by drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than modes 2 or 3.
- StabiliTrak is off and available engine power is the same as mode 3.

### PERF TRAC 5 – RACE ACTIVE HANDLING OFF

- For use by experienced drivers who are familiar with the track.
- Dry conditions only.
- Requires more driving skill than in other modes.
- StabiliTrak is off and engine power is available for maximum cornering speed.

Press and release the TCS/ StabiliTrak button to turn off PTM and return to the traction control and StabiliTrak systems. The traction off light and StabiliTrak OFF light will go out.

## Launch Control (LF4 and V-Series Only)

A Launch Control feature is available, within Competitive Driving Mode (LF4) or Performance Traction Management (V-Series), to allow the driver to achieve high levels of vehicle acceleration in a straight line. Launch Control is a form of traction control that manages tire spin while launching the vehicle. This feature is intended for use during closed course race events where consistent zero to 60 and quarter mile times are desirable.

Launch Control is only available when the following criteria are met:

- Competitive Driving Mode is selected (LF4) or any of the Performance Traction Management modes are selected (V-Series). The TCS light comes on the instrument panel and the appropriate DIC message displays.
- The vehicle is not moving.
- The steering wheel is pointing straight.

**Manual Transmissions**

- The clutch is pressed and the vehicle is in 1 (First) gear.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle.

The Launch Control feature will initially limit engine speed as the driver rapidly applies the accelerator

pedal to wide open throttle. Allow the engine rpm to stabilize.
A smooth, quick release of the clutch, while maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip. Complete shifts as described in *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *242*.

**Automatic Transmissions**

- The brake pedal must be firmly pressed to the floor, equivalent to a panic brake event.
- The accelerator pedal is rapidly applied to wide open throttle. (If the vehicle rolls due to wide open throttle, release the throttle, press the brake pedal more firmly, and re-apply the accelerator to wide open throttle.)

The Launch Control feature will initially limit engine speed as the driver rapidly applies the accelerator pedal to wide open throttle. Allow the engine rpm to stabilize.
A smooth, quick release of the brake pedal, while maintaining the fully pressed accelerator pedal, will manage wheel slip.

After the vehicle is launched, the system continues in Competitive Driving Mode (LF4) or Performance Traction Management (V-Series).

Competitive Driving Mode, PTM, and Launch Control are systems designed for a closed course race track and not intended for use on public roads. The systems are not intended to compensate for lack of driver experience or familiarity with the race track.

## Limited-Slip Rear Axle (Except LF4 and V-Series)

If equipped, the mechanical limited-slip differential can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard axle most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle. For vehicles with limited slip differential, driven under severe conditions, the rear axle fluid should be changed. See *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252* and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

## Limited-Slip Rear Axle (LF4 and V-Series Only)

If equipped, the Electronic Limited-Slip Differential (ELSD) is automatically activated. ELSD actively monitors vehicle sensors and driver inputs to determine the amount of change for the conditions. With ELSD, the vehicle has:

- Enhanced high-speed control.
- Improved traction through corners, allowing more acceleration.
- More precise steering.
- Increased vehicle agility.
- Integration with StabiliTrak.

For vehicles with ELSD, driven under severe conditions, the rear axle fluid should be changed. See *Competitive Driving Mode (LF4 and V-Series Only)* ⇨ *252* and *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

# Cruise Control

With cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph).

**⚠ Warning**

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

If equipped with a manual transmission, the cruise control will remain active when the gears are shifted. The cruise is deactivated if the clutch is pressed for several seconds.

If the StabiliTrak® system begins to limit wheel spin while using cruise control, the cruise control automatically disengages. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*. If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270*. When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, cruise control can be turned back on.

If the brakes are applied, cruise control disengages.

**(On/Off) :** Press to turn the system on and off. A white cruise control indicator appears in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate) :** If there is a set speed in memory, press the control up briefly to resume that speed or hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

**SET− (Set/Coast) :** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET− down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET− down to the second detent.

**(Cancel) :** Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

**Setting Cruise Control**

If is on when not in use, SET− or +RES could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release SET− .
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator.

When the cruise control has been set to the desired speed, the cruise control indicator appears green on the instrument cluster and a cruise set speed message appears on the Head-Up Display (HUD), if equipped.

**Resuming a Set Speed**

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, briefly press +RES up to the first detent. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

**Increasing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed**

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired speed is reached, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

**Reducing Speed While Cruise Control is at a Set Speed**

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold SET− down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, briefly press SET− down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, briefly press SET− down to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The cruise control system may automatically brake to slow the vehicle down (ATS model only).

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

### Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise speed. While pressing the accelerator pedal or shortly following the release to override cruise control, briefly applying the SET– control will result in cruise control set to the current vehicle speed.

### Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well cruise control will work on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, the cruise control system may automatically brake, and the transmission may downshift to a lower gear, to slow the vehicle down (ATS only). Also, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. If the brake pedal is applied, cruise control will disengage.

### Ending Cruise Control

There are five ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal (manual and automatic transmissions).
- Press the clutch pedal for several seconds or shift to Neutral (manual transmissions).
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- Press .
- Press .

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

## Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it allows the driver to select the cruise control set speed and following gap. Read this entire section before using this system. The following gap is the following time between your vehicle and a vehicle detected directly ahead in your path moving in the same direction. If no vehicle is detected in your path, ACC works like regular cruise control. ACC uses camera and radar sensors. See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

If a vehicle is detected in your path, ACC can apply acceleration or limited, moderate braking to maintain the selected following gap. To disengage ACC, apply the brake. If ACC is controlling your vehicle speed when the Traction Control System (TCS) or the StabiliTrak

system activates, the ACC may automatically disengage. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *249*. When road conditions allow ACC to be safely used, the ACC can be turned back on.

ACC will not engage if the TCS or StabiliTrak is disabled.

**⚠ Warning**

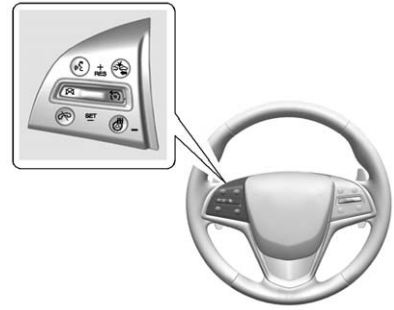
ACC has limited braking ability and may not have time to slow the vehicle down enough to avoid a collision with another vehicle you are following. This can occur when vehicles suddenly slow or stop ahead, or enter your lane. Also see “Alerting the Driver” in this section. Complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *216*.

**⚠ Warning**

ACC will not detect or brake for children, pedestrians, animals, or other objects.

Do not use ACC when:

- On winding and hilly roads or when the sensors are blocked by snow, ice, or dirt. The system may not detect a vehicle ahead. Keep the entire front of the vehicle clean.
- Visibility is low, such as in fog, rain, or snow conditions. ACC performance is limited under these conditions.
- On slippery roads where fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip.




**(On/Off) :** Press to turn the system on or off. The indicator turns white on the instrument cluster when ACC is turned on.

**+RES (Resume/Accelerate) :** Press the control up briefly to resume the previous set speed or to increase vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To increase speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press +RES up to the first detent. To increase speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press +RES up to the second detent.

**SET– (Set/Coast) :** Press the control down briefly to set the speed and activate ACC or to decrease vehicle speed if ACC is already activated. To decrease speed by 1 km/h (1 mph), press SET− down to the first detent. To decrease speed to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer, press SET− down to the second detent.

**(Cancel) :** Press to disengage ACC without erasing the set speed from memory.

**(Follow Distance Gap) :** Press to select a following gap time (or distance) setting for ACC of Far, Medium, or Near.

**Setting Adaptive Cruise Control**

If cruise control is on when not in use, the cruise on/off control could get pressed and cruise control could become active when not desired. Keep the cruise control off when cruise is not being used.

Select the set speed desired for cruise. This is the vehicle speed when no vehicle is detected in its path slower than the set speed. ACC will not set at a speed less than 25 km/h (16 mph), although it can be resumed when driving at lower speeds.

To set ACC:

1. Press .
2. Get up to the desired speed.
3. Press and release the SET– control on the steering wheel.
4. Remove foot from the accelerator.

After ACC is set, it may immediately apply the brakes if a vehicle ahead is detected closer than the selected following gap.

The ACC indicator displays in the instrument cluster and Head-Up Display (HUD). When the ACC is active, the indicator will be lit green.

Be mindful of speed limits, surrounding traffic speeds, and weather conditions when selecting the set speed.

**Resuming a Set Speed**

If the ACC is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, the ACC is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

To begin using ACC again, press +RES up briefly on the steering wheel. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

**Increasing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed**

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the accelerator to get to the higher speed. Press SET– down. Release the control and the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the higher speed.

  When the accelerator pedal is pressed, ACC will not brake because it is overridden. A warning message will appear

on the Driver Information Center (DIC) and the Head-Up Display (HUD). See *Cruise Control Messages* ⇨ *137*.

- Press and hold +RES up until the desired set speed appears on the display, then release it.
- To increase vehicle speed in small increments, press +RES up to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes 1 km/h (1 mph) faster.
- To increase vehicle speed in larger increments, press +RES up to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed increases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

When it is determined that there is no vehicle ahead inside the selected following gap, then the vehicle speed will increase to the set speed.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

**Reducing Speed While ACC is at a Set Speed**

If ACC is already activated, do one of the following:

- Use the brake to get to the desired lower speed. Press SET– down and release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will now cruise at the lower speed.
- Press and hold SET– down until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small increments, press SET− down to the first detent. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h (1 mph) slower.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in larger increments, press SET− down to the second detent. For each press, the vehicle speed decreases to the next 5 km/h (5 mph) mark on the speedometer.

The speedometer reading can be displayed in either English or metric units. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *114*. The increment value used depends on the units displayed.

**Selecting the Follow Distance**

When a slower moving vehicle is detected ahead within the selected following gap, ACC will adjust the vehicle's speed and attempt to maintain the follow distance gap selected.

Press on the steering wheel to adjust the following gap. Each press cycles the gap button through three settings: Far, Medium, or Near.

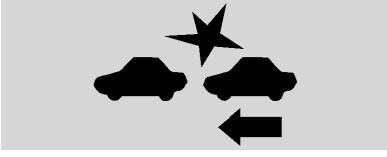
When pressed, the current gap setting displays briefly on the instrument cluster and HUD. The gap setting will be maintained until it is changed.

Since each gap setting corresponds to a following time (Far, Medium, or Near), the following distance will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further back your vehicle will follow a vehicle detected ahead. Consider

traffic and weather conditions when selecting the following gap. The range of selectable gaps may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Changing the gap setting automatically changes the alert timing sensitivity (Far, Medium, or Near) for the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) feature. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270*.

**Alerting the Driver**



If ACC is engaged, driver action may be required when ACC cannot apply sufficient braking because of approaching a vehicle too rapidly.

When this condition occurs, the collision alert symbol on the HUD will flash on the windshield. Either eight beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. See "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *216*.

**Approaching and Following a Vehicle**

The vehicle ahead symbol is in the instrument cluster and HUD display.

The vehicle ahead symbol only displays when a vehicle is detected in your vehicle's path moving in the same direction.

If this symbol is not displaying, ACC will not respond to or brake to vehicles ahead.

ACC automatically slows the vehicle down and adjusts vehicle speed to follow the vehicle in front at the selected follow gap. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front of you, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking, if necessary. When braking is active, the brake lamps will come on. The automatic braking may feel or sound different than if the brakes were applied manually. This is normal.

**Stationary or Very Slow-Moving Objects**

**⚠ Warning**

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) may not detect and react to stopped or slow-moving vehicles ahead of you. For example, the system may not brake for a vehicle it has never detected moving. This can occur in stop-and-go traffic or when a vehicle suddenly appears due to a vehicle ahead changing lanes. Your vehicle may not stop and could cause a crash. Use caution when using ACC. Your complete attention is always required while driving and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### ACC Automatically Disengages

ACC may automatically disengage and the driver will need to manually apply the brakes to slow the vehicle when:

- The sensors are blocked.
- The Traction Control System (TCS) or StabiliTrak system has activated or been disabled.
- No traffic or other objects are being detected.
- There is a fault in the system.

The ACC active symbol will not be displayed when ACC is no longer active.

### Notification to Resume ACC

ACC will maintain a follow gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

If the stopped vehicle ahead has driven away and ACC has not resumed, the vehicle ahead symbol will flash as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding. In addition, the left and right sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse three times, or three beeps will sound. See ”Alert Type” and “Go Notifier” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press +RES or the accelerator pedal to resume ACC. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver door is opened and the driver safety belt is unbuckled, the ACC automatically applies the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle. The electric parking brake status light will turn on. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*. To resume ACC and release the electric parking brake, press the accelerator pedal. ACC can be resumed when the vehicle is traveling greater than 5 km/h (3 mph).

A DIC warning message may display indicating to shift to P (Park) before exiting the vehicle. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *136*.

**⚠ Warning**

If ACC has stopped the vehicle, and if ACC is disengaged, turned off, or canceled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop. The vehicle can move. When ACC is holding the vehicle at a stop, always be prepared to manually apply the brakes.

**⚠ Warning**

Leaving the vehicle without placing it in P (Park) can be dangerous. Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by ACC. Always place the vehicle in P (Park) and turn off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

### ACC Override

If using the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, a DIC warning message will indicate that automatic braking will not occur. See *Vehicle*

*Messages* ⇨ *136*. ACC will resume operation when the accelerator pedal is not being pressed.

**⚠ Warning**

The ACC will not automatically apply the brakes if your foot is resting on the accelerator pedal. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you.

**Curves in the Road**

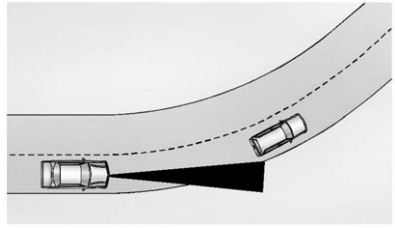
**⚠ Warning**

On curves, ACC may not detect a vehicle ahead in your lane. You could be startled if the vehicle accelerates up to the set speed, especially when following a vehicle exiting or entering exit ramps. You could lose control of the vehicle or crash. Do not use ACC while driving on an entrance or exit ramp. Always be ready to use the brakes if necessary.

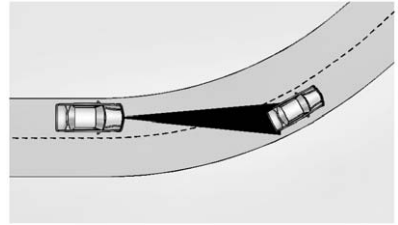
**⚠ Warning**

On curves, ACC may respond to a vehicle in another lane, or may not have time to react to a vehicle in your lane. You could crash into a vehicle ahead of you, or lose control of your vehicle. Give extra attention in curves and be ready to use the brakes if necessary. Select an appropriate speed while driving in curves.

ACC may operate differently in a sharp curve. It may reduce the vehicle speed if the curve is too sharp.



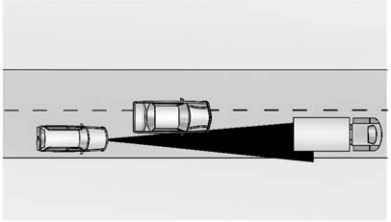
When following a vehicle and entering a curve, ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead and accelerate to the set speed. When this happens the vehicle ahead symbol will not appear.



ACC may detect a vehicle that is not in your lane and apply the brakes.

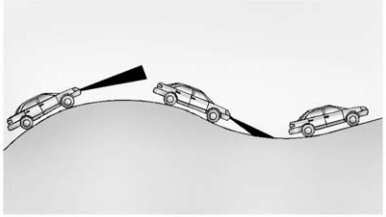
ACC may occasionally provide an alert and/or braking that is considered unnecessary. It could respond to vehicles in different lanes, signs, guardrails, and other stationary objects when entering or exiting a curve. This is normal operation. The vehicle does not need service.

### Other Vehicle Lane Changes



ACC will not detect a vehicle ahead until it is completely in the lane. The brake may need to be manually applied.

### Do Not Use ACC on Hills and When Towing a Trailer



Do not use ACC when driving on steep hills or when towing a trailer. ACC will not detect a vehicle in the lane while driving on steep hills. The driver will often need to take over acceleration and braking on steep hills, especially when towing a trailer. If the brakes are applied, the ACC disengages.

### Ending ACC

There are three ways to disengage ACC:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal.
- Press .
- Press .

### Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if  is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

### Cleaning the Sensing System

The camera sensor on the windshield behind the rearview mirror and the radar sensors on the front of the vehicle can become blocked by snow, ice, dirt, or mud. These areas need to be cleaned for ACC to operate properly.

For cleaning instructions, see “Washing the Vehicle” under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.

System operation may also be limited under snow, heavy rain, or road spray conditions.

# Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Read this entire section before using these systems.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear or feel alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. See *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *216*.

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

### Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see “Comfort and Convenience” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

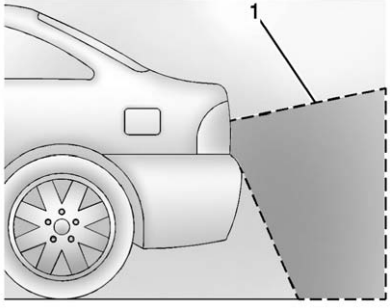
If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Assistance Systems for Parking or Backing

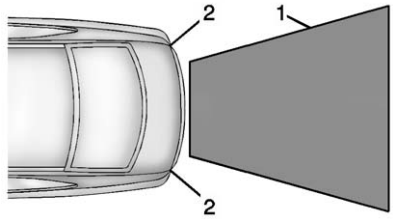
If equipped, the Rear Vision Camera (RVC), Rear Parking Assist (RPA), Front Parking Assist (FPA), Rear Automatic Braking (RAB) and Backing Warning System, and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) may help the driver park or avoid objects. Always check around the vehicle when parking or backing.

### Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

When the vehicle is shifted into R (Reverse), the RVC displays an image of the area behind the vehicle in the center stack display. The previous screen displays when the vehicle is shifted out of R (Reverse) after a short delay. To return to the previous screen sooner, press a button on the infotainment system, shift into P (Park), or reach a vehicle speed of 8 km/h (5 mph).




1. View Displayed by the Camera




1. View Displayed by the Camera
2. Corners of the Rear Bumper

Displayed images may be farther or closer than they appear. The area displayed is limited and objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper do not display.

A warning triangle may display on the RVC screen to show that Rear Parking Assist (RPA) has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object.

**⚠ Warning**

The camera(s) do not display children, pedestrians, bicyclists, crossing traffic, animals, or any other object outside of the cameras' field of view, below the bumper, or under the vehicle. Shown distances may be different from actual distances. Do not drive or park the vehicle using only these camera(s). Always check behind and around the vehicle before driving. Failure to use proper care may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

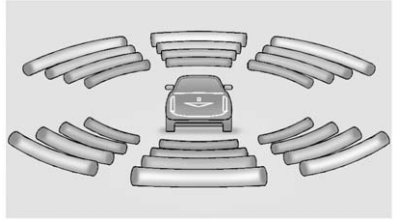
### Parking Assist

With RPA, and if equipped with FPA, as the vehicle moves at speeds of less than 8 km/h (5 mph) the sensors on the bumpers may detect objects up to 2.5 m (8 ft) behind and 1.2 m (4 ft) in front of the vehicle within a zone 25 cm (10 in) high off the ground and below bumper level. These detection distances may be shorter during warmer or humid

weather. Blocked sensors will not detect objects and can also cause false detections. Keep the sensors clean of mud, dirt, snow, ice, and slush; and clean sensors after a car wash in freezing temperatures.

**⚠ Warning**

The Parking Assist system does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects located below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. It is not available at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with parking assist, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before moving forward or backing.



The instrument cluster may have a parking assist display with bars that show “distance to object” and object location information for the Parking Assist system. As the object gets closer, more bars light up and the bars change color from yellow to amber to red.

When an object is first detected in the rear, one beep will be heard from the rear, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse two times. When an object is very close (<0.6 m (2 ft) in the vehicle rear, or <0.3 m (1 ft) in the vehicle front), five beeps will sound from the front or rear depending on object location, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. Beeps for FPA are higher pitched than for RPA.

**Backing Warning and Rear Automatic Braking**

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) have the Backing Warning and Rear Automatic Braking (RAB) system. The Backing Warning part of this system can warn of rear objects when backing up at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The Backing Warning System will beep once from the rear when a potential object threat is first detected, or pulse twice on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. When the system detects a potential crash, beeps will be heard from the rear, or five pulses will be felt on both sides of the Safety Alert Seat. There may also be a brief, sharp application of the brakes.

**⚠ Warning**

The Backing Warning System only operates at speeds greater than 8 km/h (5 mph). It does not detect children, pedestrians,

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. In some situations, such as at higher backing speeds, there may not be enough time for the short, sharp application of the vehicle brake system to occur. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with the Backing Warning System, always check the area around the vehicle and check all mirrors before backing.

When the vehicle is in R (Reverse), if the system detects the vehicle is backing too fast to avoid a crash with a detected object behind your vehicle in your path, it may automatically brake hard to a stop to help avoid or reduce the harm caused by a backing crash.

**⚠ Warning**

Rear Automatic Braking may not avoid many types of backing crashes. Do not wait for the automatic braking to apply. This system is not designed to replace driver braking and only works in R (Reverse) when an object is detected directly behind the vehicle. It may not brake or stop in time to avoid a crash. It will not brake for objects when the vehicle is moving at very low speeds. It does not detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, animals, or objects below the bumper or that are too close or too far from the vehicle. To prevent injury, death, or vehicle damage, even with Rear Automatic Braking, always check the area around the vehicle before and while backing.

Pressing the brake pedal after the vehicle comes to a stop will release the Rear Automatic Braking. If the brake pedal is not pressed soon after the stop, the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) may be set. When it is safe, press the accelerator pedal firmly at any time to override the Rear Automatic Braking.

**⚠ Warning**

There may be instances where unexpected or undesired automatic braking occurs. If this happens, either press the brake pedal or firmly press the accelerator pedal to release the brakes from the Rear Automatic Braking system. Before releasing the brakes, check the RVC screen and check the area around the vehicle to make sure it is safe to proceed.

### Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

If equipped, RCTA displays a red warning triangle with a left or right pointing arrow on the RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from the left or right. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from

the left or right side of the vehicle. When an object is detected, either three beeps sound from the left or right or three Safety Alert Seat pulses occur on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle.

Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

### Turning the Features On or Off

The P button to the left of the steering wheel is used to turn on or off the Front and Rear Parking Assist, Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), Rear Automatic Braking, and Backing Warning System at the same time. The indicator light next to the button comes on when the features are on and turns off when the features have been disabled.

Turn off parking assist and Rear Automatic Braking when towing a trailer.

To turn the RPA symbols and rear guidance lines on or off, see “Rear Camera” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

RCTA can be turned on or off through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Assistance Systems for Driving

If equipped, when driving the vehicle in a forward gear, Forward Collision Alert (FCA), Lane Departure Warning (LDW), Lane Keep Assist (LKA), Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA), Lane Change Alert (LCA), and/or the Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System can help to avoid a crash or reduce crash damage.

## Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a flashing red alert on the windshield and rapidly beeps or pulses the Safety Alert Seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m (197 ft) and operates at speeds above 40 km/h (25 mph). If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it can detect vehicles to distances of approximately 110 m (360 ft) and operates at all speeds. See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *258*.

**⚠ Warning**

FCA is a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When approaching a slower-moving or

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes. For more information, see *Defensive Driving* ⇨ *216*.

FCA can be disabled with the FCA steering wheel control, or if your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), through vehicle personalization. See the "Auto Collision Preparation" portion of "Collision/Detection Systems" under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

## Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected, the vehicle ahead indicator will display green. Vehicles may not be detected on curves, highway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

**⚠ Warning**

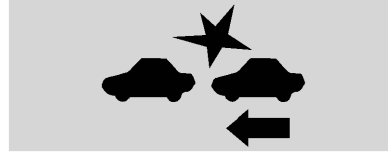
FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow,

(Continued)

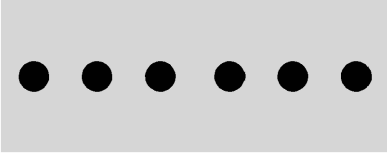
**Warning (Continued)**

or ice, or if the windshield is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windshield are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windshield, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

### Collision Alert



**With Head-Up Display**



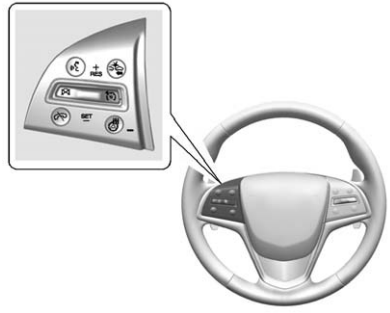
**Without Head-Up Display**

When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windshield. Also, eight high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

**Tailgating Alert**

The vehicle-ahead indicator will display amber when you are following a detected vehicle ahead much too closely.

## Selecting the Alert Timing



The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, Near, or on some vehicles, Off. The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timing may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

If your vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), changing the FCA timing setting automatically changes the ACC following gap setting (Far, Medium, or Near).

## Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not

vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

### Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, cleaning the outside of the windshield in front of the rearview mirror, and cleaning the front of the vehicle where radar sensors are located, may correct the issue.

## Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System

If the vehicle has Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), it also has FAB, which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA). When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is traveling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear. Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the FCA vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *270*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear above 4 km/h (2 mph). It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m (197 ft).

**⚠ Warning**

FAB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on FAB to brake the vehicle. FAB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

FAB may not:

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

FAB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, FAB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release automatic braking, release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

**⚠ Warning**

FAB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override FAB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

### Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA)

IBA may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

**⚠ Warning**

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

FAB and IBA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Auto Collision Preparation” in “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*.

**⚠ Warning**

Using FAB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle and crash. Turn the system to Off when towing a trailer.

## Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

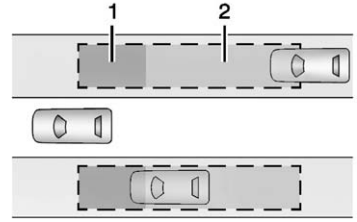
## Lane Change Alert (LCA)

If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind. The LCA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

**⚠ Warning**

LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

### LCA Detection Zones




1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

The LCA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the ground. The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) warning area starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft). Drivers are also warned of vehicles rapidly approaching from up to 25 m (82 ft) behind the vehicle.

### How the System Works

The LCA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone from behind. A lit LCA symbol indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the LCA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

**Left Side Mirror Display**

**Right Side Mirror Display**

When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror LCA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in the next lane over in that blind zone or rapidly approaching that zone.

If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *148*. If LCA is disabled by the driver, the LCA mirror displays will not light up.

### When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The LCA system requires some driving for the system to calibrate to maximum performance. This calibration may occur more quickly if the vehicle is driven on a straight highway road with traffic and roadside objects (e.g., guardrails, barriers). During a trip, the LCA system is not operational until the vehicle first reaches a speed of 24 km/h (15 mph).

LCA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. LCA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. Attached objects may also interfere with the detection of vehicles. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the next lane over, especially in wet conditions or when driving on sharp curves. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

LCA may not operate when the LCA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the LCA displays do not light up when moving vehicles are in the side blind zone or rapidly approaching this zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When LCA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Lane Change Alert On option will not be available on the personalization menu.

### Radio Frequency Information

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

## Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide a warning if the vehicle is crossing a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in the lane departure direction. Since this system is part

of the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system, read the entire LKA section before using this feature.

## Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system alert as the lane marking is crossed. The LKA system will not assist or provide an LDW alert if it detects that you are actively steering. Override LKA by turning the steering wheel. LKA uses a camera to detect lane markings between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 180 km/h (112 mph).

**⚠ Warning**

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems may not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windshield or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, if they are not in proper condition, or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an LDW

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

alert when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windshield, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions.

**⚠ Warning**

Using LKA while towing a trailer or on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle and a crash. Turn the system off.

### How the System Works

The LKA camera sensor is on the windshield ahead of the rearview mirror.

To turn LKA on and off, press to the left of the steering wheel.

When on, is green if LKA is available to assist and provide LDW alerts. It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel and display as amber if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide an LDW alert by flashing amber as the lane marking is crossed. Additionally, there will be three beeps, or the driver seat will pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert and chime may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss.

### When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

If the LKA system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windshield may help.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn LKA off if these conditions continue.

# Fuel

Use of the recommended fuel is an important part of the proper maintenance of this vehicle. When driving in the U.S. and Canada, to help keep the engine clean and maintain optimum vehicle performance, we recommend using TOP TIER Detergent Gasolines. See www.toptiergas.com for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasolines.

TOP TIER™
Detergent Gasoline

CATEGORIE SUPERIÉURE™
Essences Détergentes

If the vehicle has the 2.0L L4 engine, use premium unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. Regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher can be used, but acceleration and fuel economy will be reduced, and an audible knocking noise may be heard. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 91 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, the engine could be damaged. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline with a 91 octane rating or higher, the engine needs service.

If the vehicle has a 2.5L L4 engine or a 3.6L V6 engine, use regular unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 87 or higher. Do not use gasoline with an octane rating below 87, as it may cause engine damage and will lower fuel economy.

If the vehicle has the 3.6L V6 twin turbo engine, use premium unleaded gasoline meeting ASTM specification D4814 with a posted octane rating of 91 or higher. If the octane is less than 91, damage to the engine may occur and may void the vehicle warranty. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 91 octane or higher, the engine needs service.

### Use of Seasonal Fuels

Use summer and winter fuels in the appropriate season. The fuels industry automatically modifies the fuel for the appropriate season. If fuel is left in the vehicle tank for long periods of time, driving or starting could be affected. Drive the vehicle until the fuel is at one-half tank or less, then refuel with the current seasonal fuel.

### Prohibited Fuels

Gasolines containing oxygenates such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated gasolines, are available in some cities. If these gasolines comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in FlexFuel vehicles.

**Caution**

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.

Some gasolines, mainly high octane racing gasolines, can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use gasolines and/or fuel additives with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, see your dealer for service.

## California Fuel Requirements

If the vehicle is certified to meet California Emissions Standards, it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. See the underhood emission control label. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California Emissions Standards, the vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance might be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp could turn on and the vehicle may not pass a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121*. If this occurs, return to your authorized dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Fuels in Foreign Countries

If planning to drive in countries outside the U.S. or Canada, the proper fuel might be hard to find. Check regional auto club or fuel retail brand websites for availability in the country where driving. Never use leaded gasoline, fuel containing methanol, manganese, or any other fuel not recommended. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Fuel Additives

To keep fuel systems clean, TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is recommended. See *Fuel* ⇨ *279*.

If TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline is not available, one bottle of Fuel System Treatment PLUS added to the fuel tank at every engine oil change, can help. Fuel System Treatment PLUS is the only gasoline additive recommended by General Motors. It is available at your dealer.

## Filling the Tank

**⚠ Warning**

Fuel vapors and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

(Continued)

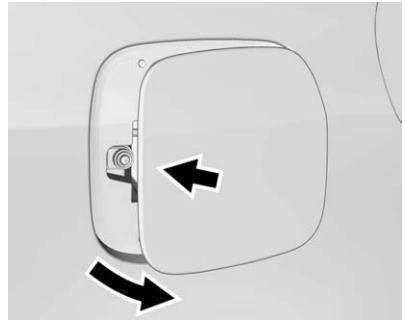
**Warning (Continued)**

- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refueling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not use a cell phone while refueling.
- Do not reenter the vehicle while pumping fuel.
- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Fuel can spray out if the fuel cap is opened too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop, then unscrew the cap all the way.



To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward center edge of the door.

**⚠ Warning**

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

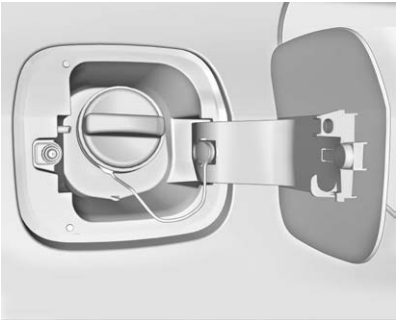
- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Potential fuel fires.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.

**⚠ Warning**

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

**Sedan – Cap Type Fuel System**



The cap is behind the fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise.

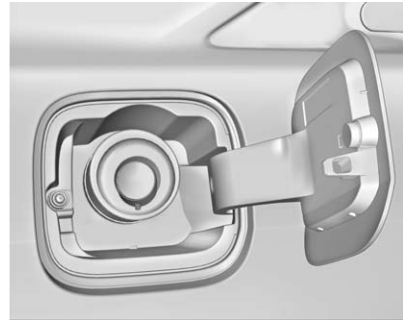
While refueling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks once. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121*.

**Caution**

If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap may not fit properly, may cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121*.

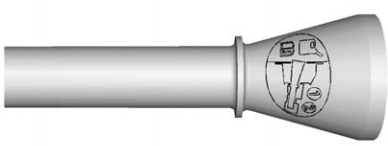
**Coupe – Capless Fuel System**



The coupe vehicle has a capless refueling system and does not have a fuel cap. The filling nozzle must be fully inserted and latched prior to starting fuel flow.

**Filling the Tank with a Portable Gas Can (Coupe)**

If a coupe vehicle runs out of fuel and must be filled from a portable gas can:



1. Locate the capless funnel adapter from under the carpet in the trunk.
2. Insert and latch the funnel into the capless fuel system.

**⚠ Warning**

Attempting to refuel without using the funnel adapter may cause fuel spillage and damage the capless fuel system. This could cause a fire and you or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged.

3. Remove and clean the funnel adapter and return it to the storage location.

## Filling a Portable Fuel Container

**⚠ Warning**

Filling a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle can cause fuel vapors that can ignite either by static electricity or other means. You or others could be badly burned and the vehicle could be damaged. Always:

- Use approved fuel containers.
- Remove the container from the vehicle, trunk, or pickup bed before filling.
- Place the container on the ground.
- Place the nozzle inside the fill opening of the container before dispensing fuel, and keep it in contact with the fill opening until filling is complete.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Fill the container no more than 95% full to allow for expansion.
- Do not smoke, light matches, or use lighters while pumping fuel.
- Avoid using cell phones or other electronic devices.

# Trailer Towing

## General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer. Read the entire section before towing a trailer.

For towing a disabled vehicle, see *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *365*. For towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, see *Recreational Vehicle Towing* ⇨ *366*.

## Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

### Driving with a Trailer

When towing a trailer:

- Become familiar with the state and local laws that apply to trailer towing.
- Do not tow a trailer during the first 2 414 km (1,500 mi) to prevent damage to the engine, axle, or other parts.
- Then during the first 800 km (500 mi) of trailer towing, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle.
- Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.
- Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control when towing.
- The Front Automatic Braking System should be set to Off when towing. See *Front Automatic Braking (FAB) System* ⇨ *273*.
- Turn off Parking Assist when towing.

**⚠ Warning**

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window is open.

When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate, trunk/hatch, or rear-most window open.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Also adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

For more information about Carbon Monoxide, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*.

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. The combination you are driving is longer and not as responsive as the

vehicle itself. Get acquainted with the handling and braking of the rig before setting out for the open road.

Before starting, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirrors. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the combination moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes work.

During the trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure and the lamps and any trailer brakes still work.

### Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid heavy braking and sudden turns.

### Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. The combination will not accelerate as quickly and is longer so it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

### Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. To move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

### Making Turns

| Caution |
| --- |
| Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering. |

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer will not strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees, or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

If the trailer turn signal bulbs burn out, the arrows on the instrument cluster will still flash for turns. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

### Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles can tow in D (Drive). Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the

vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the automatic transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *312*.

### Parking on Hills

**⚠ Warning**

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park).
5. Release the brake pedal.

### Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Shift into a gear.
4. Release the parking brake.
5. Let up on the brake pedal.
6. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
7. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

### Maintenance when Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

## Trailer Towing (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)

Before pulling a trailer, three important considerations have to do with weight:

- Weight of the trailer.
- Weight of the trailer tongue.
- Total weight on your vehicle's tires.

## Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It should never weigh more than 454 kg (1,000 lb). But even that can be too heavy.

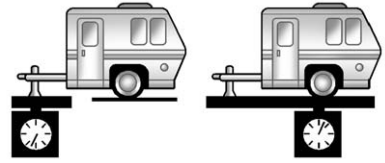
It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature, and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” following.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming the tow vehicle has the driver, a front seat passenger and all the required tow equipment. and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers, and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Ask your dealer for trailering information or advice, or write us at our Customer Assistance Offices. See *Customer Assistance Offices* ⇨ *400*.

## Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (1) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers, or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.




The trailer tongue (1) should weigh 10 % of the total loaded trailer weight (2).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

## Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits*

⇨ *226*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, including the weight of the trailer tongue.

## Trailer Towing (Sedan With L4 Engine)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

## Trailer Towing (Coupe and V-Series)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

## Towing Equipment (Coupe and V-Series)

The vehicle is neither designed nor intended to tow a trailer.

## Towing Equipment (Sedan With V6 Engine Except V-Series)

### Hitches

Use the correct hitch equipment. See your dealer or a hitch dealer for assistance.

- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If so, seal the holes when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*.

### Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Leave enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

### Trailer Brakes

Does the trailer have its own brakes? Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly.

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not tap into the vehicle's brake system. If this is done, both brake systems will not work well or at all.

# Conversions and Add-Ons

## Add-On Electrical Equipment

**⚠ Warning**

The Data Link Connector (DLC) is used for vehicle service and Emission Inspection/Maintenance testing. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp (Check Engine Light)* ⇨ *121* . A device connected to the DLC — such as an aftermarket fleet or driver-behavior tracking device — may interfere with vehicle systems. This could affect vehicle operation and cause a crash. Such devices may also access information stored in the vehicle's systems.

**Caution**

Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *82* and *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *82*.

# Vehicle Care


## General Information
General Information . . . . . 291
California Proposition 65 Warning . . . . . 291
California Perchlorate Materials Requirements . . . . . 291
Accessories and Modifications . . . . . 291

## Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work . . . . . 292
Hood . . . . . 293
Engine Compartment Overview . . . . . 294
Engine Oil . . . . . 301
Engine Oil Life System . . . . . 303
Automatic Transmission Fluid . . . . . 305
Manual Transmission Fluid . . . 305
Hydraulic Clutch . . . . . 305
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter . . . . . 306
Cooling System (Engine) . . . . . 307
Cooling System (Intercooler) . . . . . 309
Engine Coolant . . . . . 309
Engine Overheating . . . . . 312
Washer Fluid . . . . . 313
Brakes . . . . . 314
Brake Fluid . . . . . 315
Battery - North America . . . . . 316
All-Wheel Drive . . . . . 317
Starter Switch Check . . . . . 318
Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check . . . . . 318
Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check . . . . . 319
Wiper Blade Replacement . . . . 319
Windshield Replacement . . . . . 320

## Headlamp Aiming
Headlamp Aiming . . . . . 320

## Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement . . . . . 320
Halogen Bulbs . . . . . 320
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting . . . . . 321
LED Lighting . . . . . 321
Back-Up Lamps . . . . . 321
License Plate Lamp . . . . . 322
Replacement Bulbs . . . . . 322

## Electrical System
Electrical System Overload . . . 323
Fuses and Circuit Breakers . . . 323
Engine Compartment Fuse Block . . . . . 324
Instrument Panel Fuse Block . . . . . 327
Rear Compartment Fuse Block . . . . . 329

## Wheels and Tires
Tires . . . . . 332
All-Season Tires . . . . . 333
Winter Tires . . . . . 333
Run-Flat Tires . . . . . 333
Self-Sealing Tires . . . . . 334
Summer Tires . . . . . 335
Tire Sidewall Labeling . . . . . 335
Tire Designations . . . . . 336
Tire Terminology and Definitions . . . . . 337
Tire Pressure . . . . . 339
Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation . . . . . 341
Tire Pressure Monitor System . . . . . 341
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation . . . . . 342
Tire Inspection . . . . . 345
Tire Rotation . . . . . 345
When It Is Time for New Tires . . . . . 347
Buying New Tires . . . . . 348
Different Size Tires and Wheels . . . . . 349

Uniform Tire Quality Grading . . . . . 349
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance . . . . . 351
Wheel Replacement . . . . . 351
Tire Chains . . . . . 352
If a Tire Goes Flat . . . . . 353
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit . . . . . 354
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit . . . . . 361

**Jump Starting**
Jump Starting - North America . . . . . 362

**Towing the Vehicle**
Towing the Vehicle . . . . . 365
Recreational Vehicle Towing . . . . . 366

**Appearance Care**
Exterior Care . . . . . 368
Interior Care . . . . . 372
Floor Mats . . . . . 375

# General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems, many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

See *Battery - North America* ⇨ *316* and *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.

## California Perchlorate Materials Requirements

Certain types of automotive applications, such as airbag initiators, safety belt pretensioners, and lithium batteries contained in Remote Keyless Entry transmitters, may contain perchlorate materials. Special handling may be necessary. For additional information, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

## Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as

airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Also, see *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *82*.

# Vehicle Checks

## Doing Your Own Service Work

**⚠ Warning**

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information* ⇨ *407*.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *82*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed. See *Maintenance Records* ⇨ *392*.

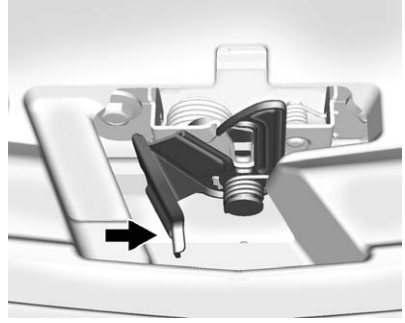
**Caution**

Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

## Hood

To open the hood:

1. Pull the hood release handle inside the vehicle. It is on the lower left side of the instrument panel.

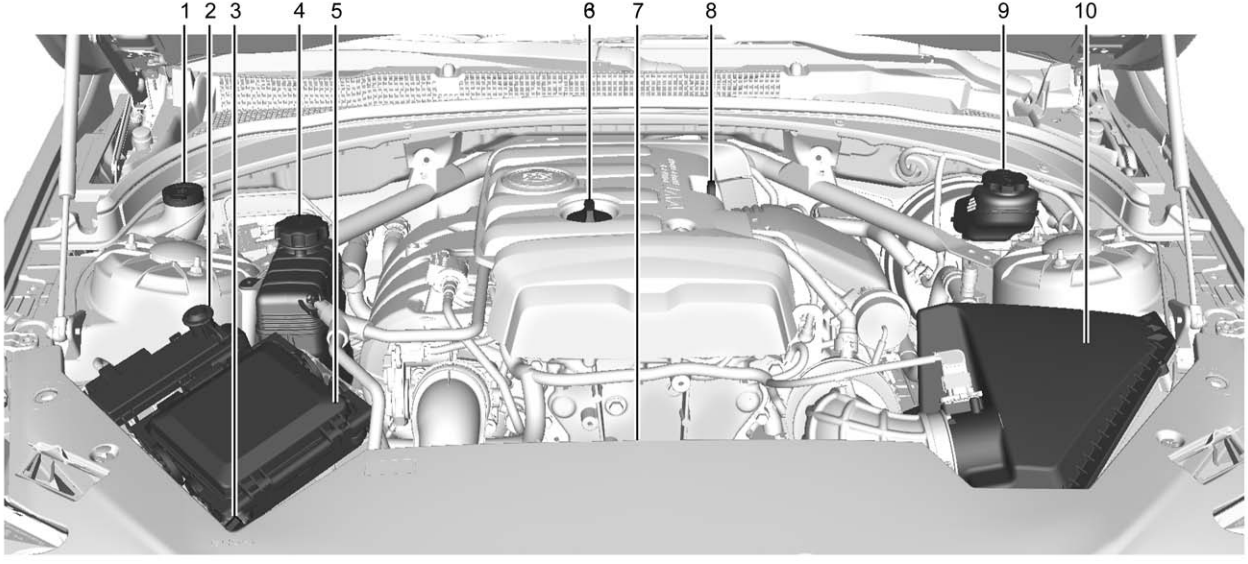


2. Go to the front of the vehicle and move the secondary hood release lever toward the right side of the vehicle.
3. Lift the hood.

To close the hood:

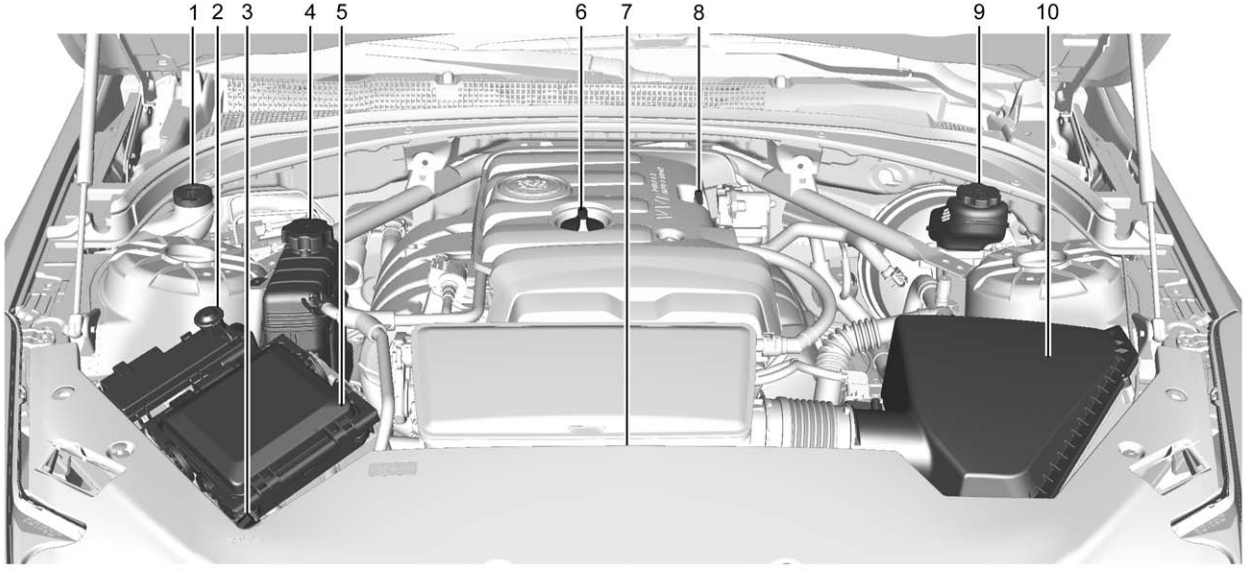
Before closing the hood, be sure all filler caps are on properly. Then, bring the hood from full open to within 152 mm (6 in) of the closed position. Pause, then push the front center of the hood with a swift, firm motion to fully close the hood.

## Engine Compartment Overview



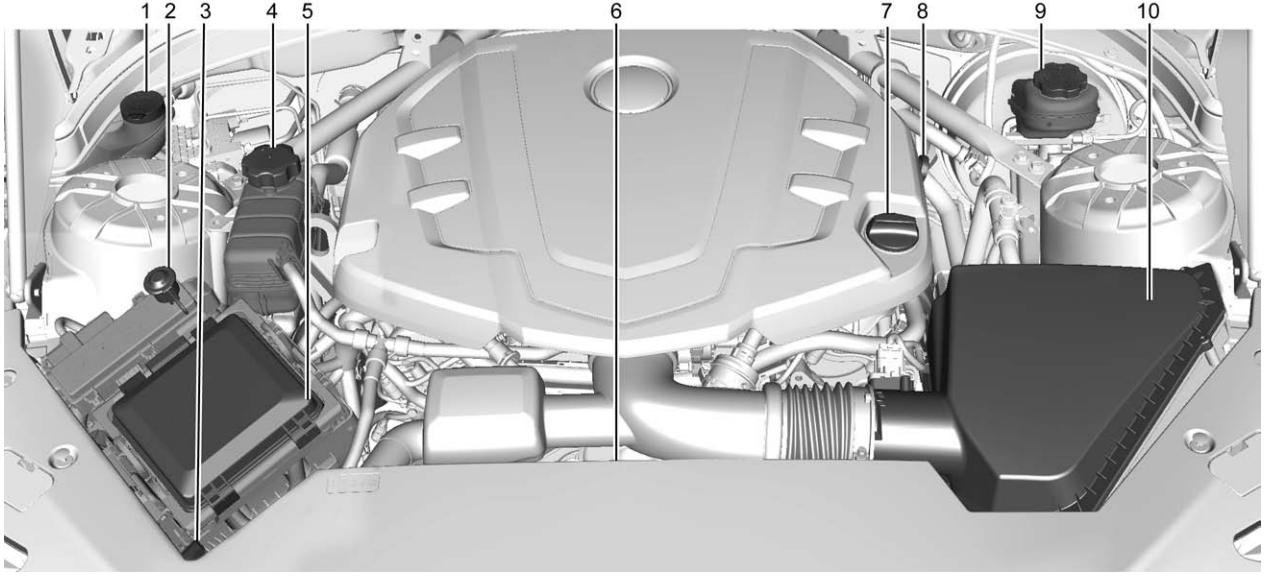

**2.0L L4 Engine LTG**

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *324*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
7. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes* ⇨ *314* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *305*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *306*.



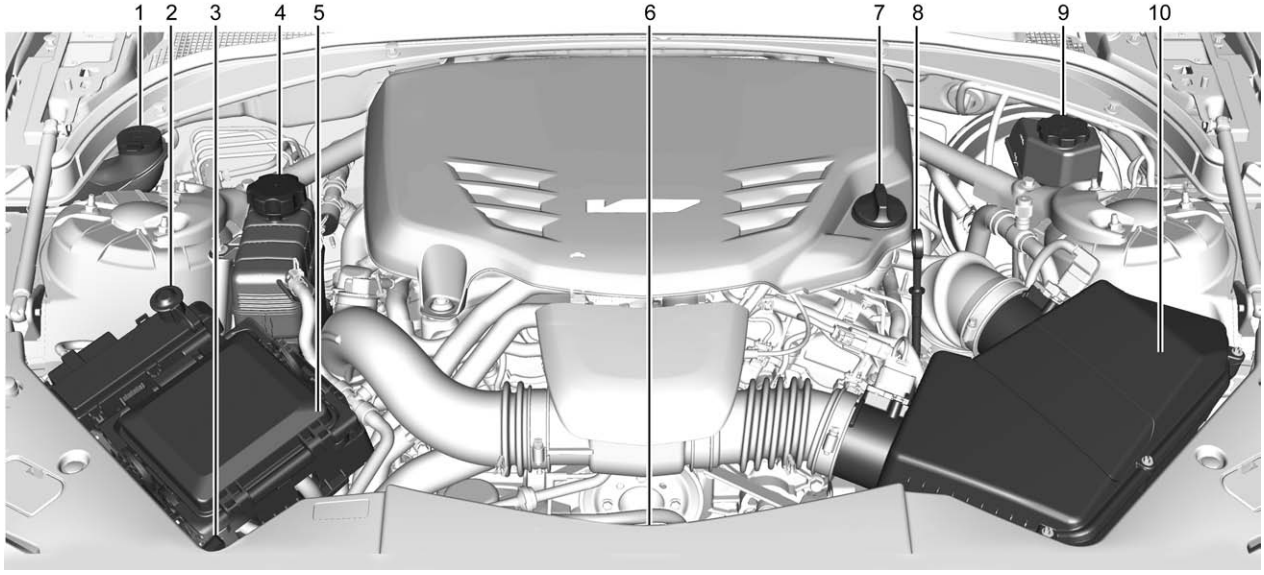

**2.5L L4 Engine LCV**

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *324*.
6. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
7. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes* ⇨ *314* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *305*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *306*.




**3.6L V6 Engine LGX**

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *324*.
6. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes* ⇨ *314* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *305*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *306*.




**3.6L V6 Engine Twin Turbo LF4**

1. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.
2. Remote Positive (+) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
3. Remote Negative (-) Battery Terminal. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362*.
4. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
5. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *324*.
6. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View). See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.
7. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
8. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.
9. Brake/Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brakes* ⇨ *314* and *Hydraulic Clutch* ⇨ *305*.
10. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *306*.

## Engine Oil

To ensure proper engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the proper specification and of the proper viscosity grade. See “Selecting the Right Engine Oil” in this section.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the proper oil level. See “Checking Engine Oil” and “When to Add Engine Oil” in this section.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly. See “What to Do with Used Oil” in this section.

### Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check the engine oil level at each fuel fill. In order to get an accurate reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. The engine oil dipstick handle is a loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

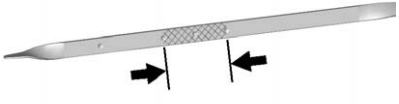
1. If the engine has been running recently, turn off the engine and allow several minutes for the oil to drain back into the oil pan. Checking the oil level too soon after engine shutoff will not provide an accurate oil level reading.

**⚠ Warning**

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

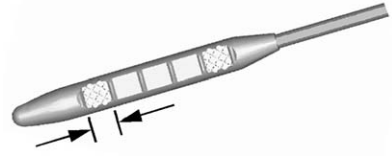
2. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.

## When to Add Engine Oil



**2.0L L4 (LTG) and 2.5L L4 (LCV) Engines**

**3.6 V6 (LGX) Engine**



**3.6L V6 (LF4) Twin Turbo Engine**

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, add 1 L (1 qt) of the recommended oil and then recheck the level. See "Selecting the Right Engine Oil" in this section for an explanation of what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *394*.

**Caution**

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when through.

## Selecting the Right Engine Oil

Selecting the right engine oil depends on both the proper oil specification and viscosity grade. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

### Specification

Ask for and use engine oils that meet the dexos1™ specification. Engine oils that have been

approved by GM as meeting the dexos1 specification are marked with the dexos1 approved logo. See www.gmdexos.com.

**Caution**

Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Viscosity Grade

Use SAE 5W-30 viscosity grade engine oil for the 2.0L L4 (LTG) turbo engine, 3.6 V6 (LGX) Engine, and the 3.6L V6 (LF4) twin turbo engine.

Use SAE 5W-20 viscosity grade engine oil for the 2.5L L4 (LCV) engine. SAE 0W-20 may be used as an alternative.

Cold Temperature Operation: In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below −29 °C (−20 °F), an SAE 0W-30 oil may be used for the 2.0L L4 turbo engine and the 3.6L V6 engines. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, it is recommended to select an oil of the correct specification. See “Specification” earlier in this section.

### Engine Oil Additives/Engine Oil Flushes

Do not add anything to the oil. The recommended oils meeting the dexos1 specification are all that is needed for good performance and engine protection.

Engine oil system flushes are not recommended and could cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

### What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that can be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer's warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash or pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil.

## Engine Oil Life System

### When to Change Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which

include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and miles driven. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes on. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ *138*. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km (600 mi). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5 000 km (3,000 mi) since the last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

### How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change. To reset the system:

1. Using the DIC controls on the right side of the steering wheel, display REMAINING OIL LIFE on the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*. When remaining oil life is low, the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message will appear on the display. See *Engine Oil Messages* ⇨ *138*.
2. Press SEL on the DIC controls and hold SEL down for a few seconds to clear the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message and reset the oil life at 100%.

   Be careful not to reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than after the oil is changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Turn the ignition on with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

   If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is not on, the system is reset.

The system is reset when the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message is off.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not been reset. Repeat the procedure.

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

### How to Check Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer. Contact your dealer for additional information.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*, and be sure to use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

## Manual Transmission Fluid

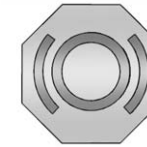
### How to Check Manual Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389* for the proper fluid to use.

## Hydraulic Clutch

For vehicles with a manual transmission, it is not necessary to regularly check brake/clutch fluid unless there is a leak suspected. Adding fluid will not correct a leak. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

### When to Check and What to Use



The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid reservoir cap has either a symbol or text specifying the type of brake fluid. The common brake/clutch fluid reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for reservoir location.

### How to Check and Add Fluid

Visually check the brake/clutch fluid reservoir to make sure the fluid level is at the MIN (minimum) line on the side of the reservoir. The brake/hydraulic clutch fluid system should be closed and sealed.

Do not remove the cap to check the fluid level or to top off the fluid level. Remove the cap only when necessary to add the proper fluid until the level reaches the MIN line.

## Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for location.

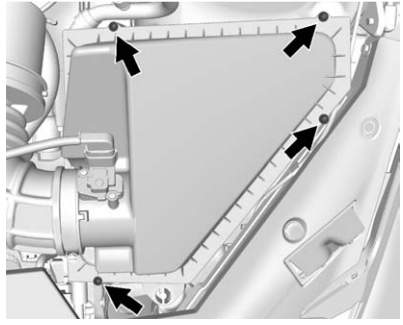
### When to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

For intervals on changing and inspecting the engine air cleaner/filter, see *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

### How to Inspect the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

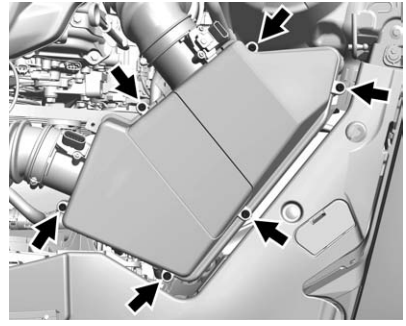
Do not start the engine or have the engine running with the engine air cleaner/filter housing open. Before removing the engine air cleaner/filter, make sure that the engine air cleaner/filter housing and nearby components are free of dirt and debris. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter. Lightly tap and shake the engine air cleaner/filter (away from the vehicle), to release loose dust and dirt. Inspect the engine air cleaner/filter for damage, and replace if damaged. Do not clean the engine air cleaner/filter or components with water or compressed air.

To inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter:



**2.0L L4 LTG Engine Shown, 2.5L L4 LCV Engine, and 3.6L V6 LGX Engine Similar**

1. Remove the four screws and lift the cover out of the assembly.
2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.
3. Lower the cover and secure with the four screws.



**3.6L V6 LF4 Twin Turbo Engine**

1. Remove the six screws and lift the cover out of the assembly.
2. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filters. Filters can be removed from top cover by pushing in buttons, see arrows.
3. Lower the cover and secure with the six screws.

**⚠ Warning**

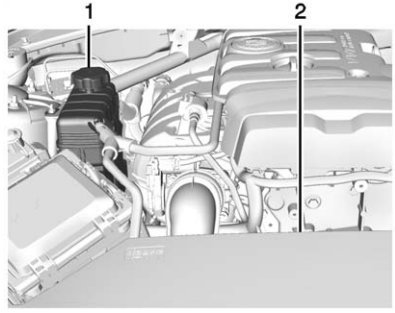
Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flames if the engine backfires. Use caution when working on the engine and do not drive with the air cleaner/filter off.

**Caution**

If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when you are driving.

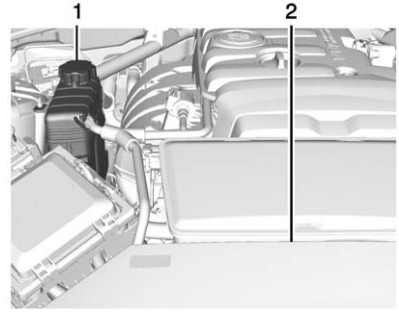
## Cooling System (Engine)

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct working temperature.



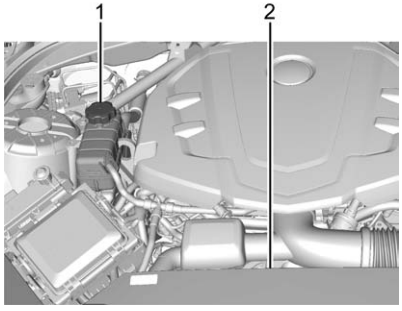

**2.0L L4 LTG Engine**

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)



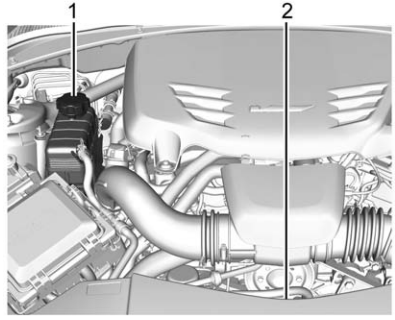

**2.5L L4 LCV Engine**

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)




**3.6L V6 LGX Engine**

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)




**3.6L V6 LF4 Engine**

1. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap
2. Engine Cooling Fan (Out of View)

**⚠ Warning**

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

**⚠ Warning**

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

**Caution**

Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® can cause premature engine, heater core, or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant could require changing sooner. Any repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use DEX-COOL (silicate-free) coolant in the vehicle.

## Cooling System (Intercooler)

### Intercooler ATS-V Only

The 3.6L LF4 V6 engine has an intercooler cooling system.

The intercooler cooling system has a special procedure for draining and adding coolant. Because this procedure is difficult, see the dealer for service if the intercooler is low on coolant or a leak is suspected.

## Engine Coolant

The cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL engine coolant. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379* and *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *312*.

### What to Use

**⚠ Warning**

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Use a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant. This mixture:

- Gives freezing protection down to −37 °C (−34 °F), outside temperature.
- Gives boiling protection up to 129 °C (265 °F), engine temperature.
- Protects against rust and corrosion.
- Will not damage aluminum parts.
- Helps keep the proper engine temperature.

**Caution**

If improper coolant mixture, inhibitors, or additives are used in the vehicle cooling system, the engine could overheat and be damaged. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack engine cooling parts. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Use only the proper mixture of engine coolant for the cooling system. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

Never dispose of engine coolant by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, or into sewers, streams,

or bodies of water. Have the coolant changed by an authorized service center, familiar with legal requirements regarding used coolant disposal. This will help protect the environment and your health.

### Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

It is normal to see coolant moving in the upper coolant hose return line when the engine is running. It is also normal to see bubbles entering the surge tank through the small hose.

Check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down.

If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the COLD FILL line, add a 50/50 mixture of clean drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

Be sure the cooling system is cool before this is done.

It is normal for the coolant level in the bottom chamber to rise and fall with operating temperature and ambient conditions. Coolant will evaporate from the bottom chamber in normal operation. This will happen faster when the vehicle is driven for long periods in hot, dry conditions.

If no coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank, add coolant as follows:

### How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

**Caution**

This vehicle has a specific coolant fill procedure. Failure to follow this procedure could cause the engine to overheat and be severely damaged.

If no problem is found, check to see if coolant is visible in the coolant surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at the bottom of the fill neck, add a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it.

**⚠ Warning**

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and surge tank pressure cap to cool.

**⚠ Warning**

Adding only plain water or some other liquid to the cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water and other liquids, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. The coolant warning system is set

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, the engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. The engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL coolant.

**Caution**

In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core, and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.

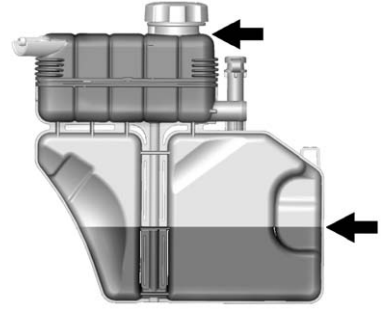
**⚠ Warning**

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.



1. Remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap from the top chamber when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

   Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. This will allow any pressure still left to be vented out the discharge hose.

2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it. Open the surge tank service port cap to the lower chamber

3. Fill the surge tank top chamber with the proper DEX-COOL coolant mixture to the bottom of the fill neck. The top chamber needs to be completely full. Fill the surge tank bottom chamber through the service port to approximately half.

4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off and the surge tank service port cap open, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank top chamber may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper DEX-COOL

coolant mixture to the surge tank top chamber until the level reaches the bottom of the fill neck.

5. Replace the surge tank pressure cap tightly and close the surge tank service port cap.

**Caution**

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Check the level in the surge tank top and bottom chambers when the cooling system has cooled down. If the coolant is not at the proper levels, repeat Steps 1–3 and reinstall the pressure cap and close the service port. If the coolant still is not at the proper levels when the system cools down again, see your dealer.

## Engine Overheating

The vehicle has several indicators to warn of the engine overheating.

There is an engine coolant temperature gauge and an engine coolant temperature warning light on the instrument cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *118* and *Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ⇨ *126*. The vehicle may also display a message on the Driver Information Center (DIC). See *Engine Cooling System Messages* ⇨ *138*.

If the decision is made not to lift the hood when this warning appears, get service help right away. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

If the decision is made to lift the hood, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface.

Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

**Caution**

Running the engine without coolant may cause damage or a fire. Vehicle damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

**⚠ Warning**

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when the engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop the

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

### If Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment with No Overheat Warning (V-Series Only)

The V-Series hood vent is functional, and will allow water from rain and car washes to enter the engine compartment and contact hot surfaces. If steam is seen coming from the hood vent with no accompanying overheat warning, no action is required.

### If No Steam Is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.

If the overheat warning is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral) for an automatic transmission or Neutral for a manual transmission, and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheated area or the engine coolant temperature warning light no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the warning does not come back on, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away.

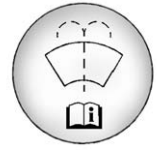
If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the warning is still displayed, turn off the engine until it cools down.

## Washer Fluid

### What to Use

When windshield washer fluid is needed, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If operating the vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

### Adding Washer Fluid



Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for reservoir location.

**Caution**

- Do not use washer fluid that contains any type of water repellent coating. This can cause the wiper blades to chatter or skip.
- Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in the windshield washer. It can damage the windshield washer system and paint.
- Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage the washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system.

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

- When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer instructions for adding water.
- Fill the washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for fluid expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.

## Brakes

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go or be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

**⚠ Warning**

The brake wear warning sound means that soon the brakes will not work well. That could lead to a crash. When the brake wear warning sound is heard, have the vehicle serviced.

**Caution**

Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

If equipped with high performance brake linings, there could be an increased build-up of brake dust as well as minor noises as compared to standard brake linings.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to torque specifications. See *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *394*.

Brake pads should be replaced as complete sets.

### Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign that brake service may be required.

### Replacing Brake System Parts

Always replace brake system parts with new, approved replacement parts. If this is not done, the brakes may not work properly. The braking performance expected can change in many other ways if the wrong replacement brake parts are installed or parts are improperly installed.

## Brake Fluid

The brake/clutch master cylinder reservoir is filled with GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid as indicated on the reservoir cap. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *294* for the location of the reservoir.

#### Checking Brake Fluid

With the vehicle in P (Park) on a level surface, the brake fluid level should be between the minimum and maximum marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir may go down:

- Normal brake lining wear. When new linings are installed, the fluid level goes back up.
- A fluid leak in the brake/clutch hydraulic system. Have the brake/clutch hydraulic system fixed. With a leak, the brakes will not work well.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it.

Do not top off the brake/clutch fluid. Adding fluid does not correct a leak. If fluid is added when the linings are worn, there will be too much fluid when new brake linings are installed. Add or remove fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

**⚠ Warning**

If too much brake fluid is added, it can spill on the engine and burn, if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and the vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake/clutch hydraulic system.

When the brake/clutch fluid falls to a low level, the brake warning light comes on. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *123*.

Brake fluid absorbs water over time which degrades the effectiveness of the brake fluid. Replace brake fluid at the specified intervals to prevent increased stopping distance. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

**What to Add**

Use only GM approved DOT 3 brake fluid from a clean, sealed container. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

**⚠ Warning**

The wrong or contaminated brake fluid could result in damage to the brake system. This could result in the loss of braking leading to a possible injury. Always use the proper GM approved brake fluid.

**Caution**

If brake fluid is spilled on the vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Immediately wash off any painted surface.

## Battery - North America

The original equipment battery is maintenance free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

The battery is in the trunk, beneath the trim panel, on the driver side of the vehicle. Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.

**⚠ Warning**

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.** See *California Proposition 65 Warning* ⇨ *291*.

After a power loss, such as disconnecting the battery or removing the maxi fuses in the power distribution fuse block, the following steps must be performed to calibrate the electronic throttle control. If this is not done, the engine will not run properly.

1. Turn the ignition on but do not start the engine.
2. Leave the ignition on for at least three minutes so that the electronic throttle control will cycle and relearn its home position.
3. Turn the ignition off.

4. Start and run the engine for at least 30 seconds.

If equipped with the Stop/Start system, the engine will not engage autostop after the battery is disconnected. After reconnecting the battery, the vehicle must sit untouched for four hours. See “Auto Engine Stop/Start” in *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *232*.

### Vehicle Storage

**⚠ Warning**

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting - North America* ⇨ *362* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (−) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

## All-Wheel Drive

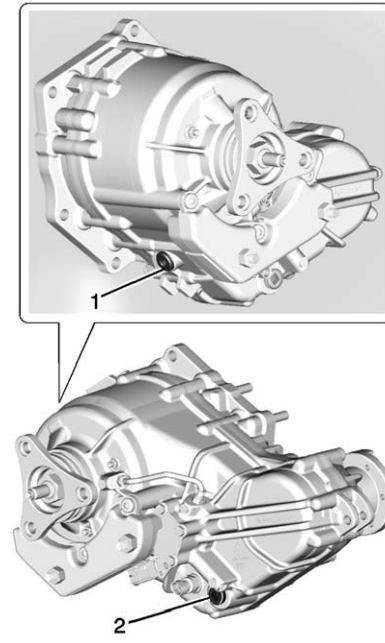
If the vehicle is equipped with All-Wheel-Drive (AWD), this is an additional system that needs lubrication.

### Transfer Case

#### When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check the transfer case fluid unless a leak is suspected or an unusual noise is heard. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

#### How to Check Lubricant




1. Fill Plug
2. Drain Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the fill plug hole, on the transfer case, some lubricant will need to be added. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the fill plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the fill plug.

**What to Use**

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

## Starter Switch Check

**⚠ Warning**

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle.
2. Apply both the parking brake and the regular brake.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. For automatic transmission vehicles, try to start the engine in each gear. The vehicle should start only in P (Park) or N (Neutral). If the vehicle starts in any other position, contact your dealer for service.

   For manual transmission vehicles, put the shift lever in Neutral, push the clutch pedal down halfway, and try to start the engine. The vehicle should start only when the clutch pedal is pushed down all the way to the floor. If the vehicle starts when the clutch pedal is not pushed all the way down, contact your dealer for service.

## Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check

**⚠ Warning**

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before starting this check, be sure there is enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Apply the parking brake. Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition on, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of P (Park) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of P (Park), contact your dealer for service.

## Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check

**⚠ Warning**

When you are doing this check, the vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of the vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and the transmission in N (Neutral), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the P (Park) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to P (Park). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your dealer if service is required.

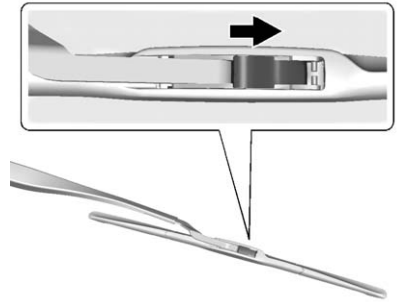
## Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracking. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Maintenance Replacement Parts* ⇨ *391*.

To replace the windshield wiper blade:

1. Pull the windshield wiper assembly away from the windshield.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.

   Allowing the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windshield. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle

warranty. Do not allow the wiper blade arm to touch the windshield.

5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

## Windshield Replacement

### HUD System

The windshield is part of the HUD system. If the windshield must be replaced, get one that is designed for HUD or the HUD image may look out of focus.

### Driver Assistance Systems

When a windshield replacement is needed and the vehicle is equipped with a front-looking camera sensor for the Driver Assistance Systems, the windshield must be installed according to GM specifications for these systems to work properly. If it is not, there may be unexpected behavior and/or messages from these systems. See *Object Detection System Messages* ⇨ *140*.

## Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

## Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs* ⇨ *322*.

For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

### Halogen Bulbs

**⚠ Warning**

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

## High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

**⚠ Warning**

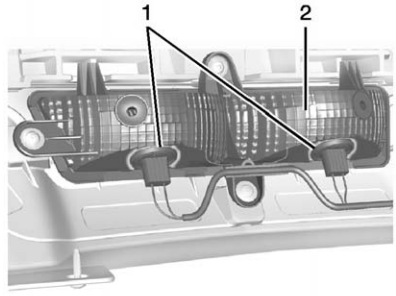
The high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

## LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

## Back-Up Lamps

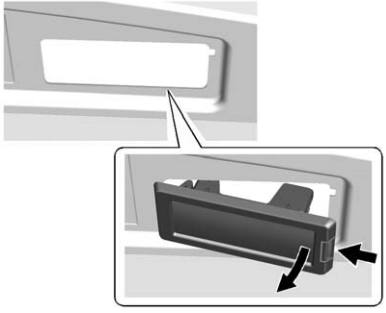



1. Back-Up Bulb Socket
2. Back-Up Lamp Assembly

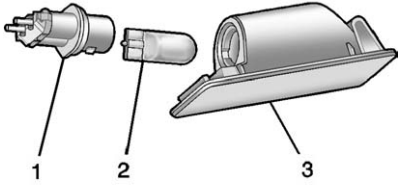
To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Reach under the rear fascia and locate the back-up lamp assembly.
2. Remove the bulb socket (1) by turning counterclockwise and pulling straight out of the lamp assembly (2).
3. Pull the bulb out of the socket.
4. Install the new bulb in the bulb socket.
5. Install the bulb socket by turning clockwise.

## License Plate Lamp



**Lamp Assembly**




**Bulb Assembly**

1. Bulb Socket
2. Bulb
3. Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Push the lamp assembly (3) toward the center of the vehicle.
2. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove.
3. Turn the bulb socket (1) counterclockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
4. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Push the lamp assembly back into position until the release tab locks into place.

## Replacement Bulbs

| Exterior Lamp | Bulb Number |
|---|---|
| Back-Up Lamp | 921 (W16W) |
| License Plate Lamp | W5W LL |

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

# Electrical System

## Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

### Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

### Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

## Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

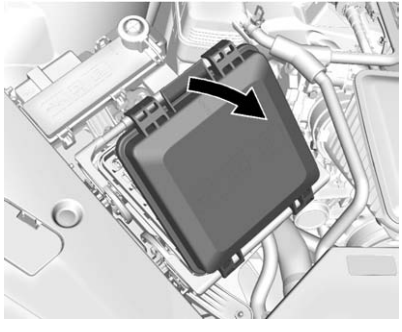
To check a fuse, look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, see *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *324*, *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *327*, and *Rear Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *329*.

## Engine Compartment Fuse Block

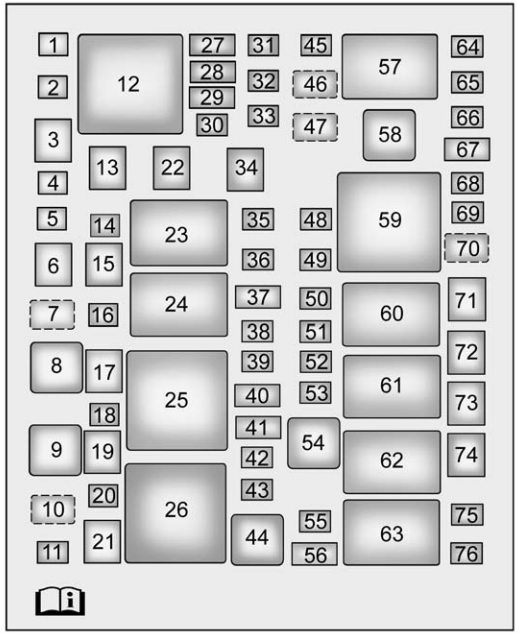
The underhood fuse block is on the passenger side of the engine compartment.



Lift the fuse block cover to access the fuses.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.

| Caution |
| --- |
| Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component. |



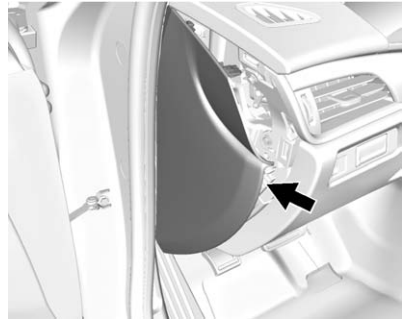

| Number | Usage |
|---|---|
| 1 | Not used |
| 2 | Not used |
| 3 | Passenger motorized seat belt |
| 4 | Not used |
| 5 | Not used |
| 6 | Driver power seat |
| 7 | Not used |
| 8 | Headlamp washer relay |
| 9 | Not used |
| 10 | Not used |
| 11 | Not used |
| 12 | Not used |
| 13 | Passenger power seat |
| 14 | Not used |
| 15 | Passive entry/ Passive start |
| 16 | Not used |
| 17 | Headlamp washer |

| Number | Usage |
|---|---|
| 18 | Not used |
| 19 | Antilock brake system pump |
| 20 | Antilock brake system valve |
| 21 | Not used |
| 22 | Driver motorized seat belt |
| 23 | Wiper control relay |
| 24 | Wiper speed relay |
| 25 | Engine control module relay |
| 26 | Not used |
| 27 | Spare/Heated seat 2 |
| 28 | Spare/Reverse lockout |
| 29 | AFS AHL/ Pedestrian protection |
| 30 | Not used |
| 31 | Passenger window switch |
| 32 | Not used |
| 33 | Sunroof |
| 34 | Front wiper |
| 35 | Steering column lock |
| 36 | Rear electrical center ignition |
| 37 | Spare/MIL ignition |
| 38 | Spare/PT fuse |
| 39 | Oxygen sensor |
| 40 | Ignition coils/ Injectors |
| 41 | Ignition coils/ Injectors/Spare |
| 42 | Engine control module |
| 43 | Not used |
| 44 | Not used |
| 45 | Washer |
| 46 | Not used |
| 47 | Front washer relay |
| 48 | Instrument panel body ignition |
| 49 | Fuel system control module ignition |
| 50 | Heated steering wheel |
| 51 | Engine control module ignition |
| 52 | Transmission control module ignition |
| 53 | Coolant pump |
| 54 | Coolant pump relay |
| 55 | Not used |
| 56 | Transmission control module/ Spare |
| 57 | Headlamp low relay |
| 58 | Headlamp high relay |
| 59 | Run/Crank relay |
| 60 | Starer 2 relay |
| 61 | Vacuum pump relay |

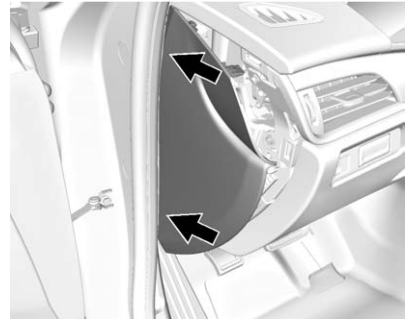
| Number | Usage |
|---|---|
| 62 | Starter relay |
| 63 | Air conditioning control relay |
| 64 | Adaptive headlamp leveling |
| 65 | Left high intensity discharge headlamp |
| 66 | Right high intensity discharge headlamp |
| 67 | Headlamp high left/ right |
| 68 | Aero shutter |
| 69 | Horn |
| 70 | Horn relay |
| 71 | Cooling fan |
| 72 | Starter 2 |
| 73 | Brake vacuum pump |
| 74 | Starter |
| 75 | Air conditioning compressor clutch |
| 76 | Not used |

## Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is in the end of the driver side of the instrument panel.

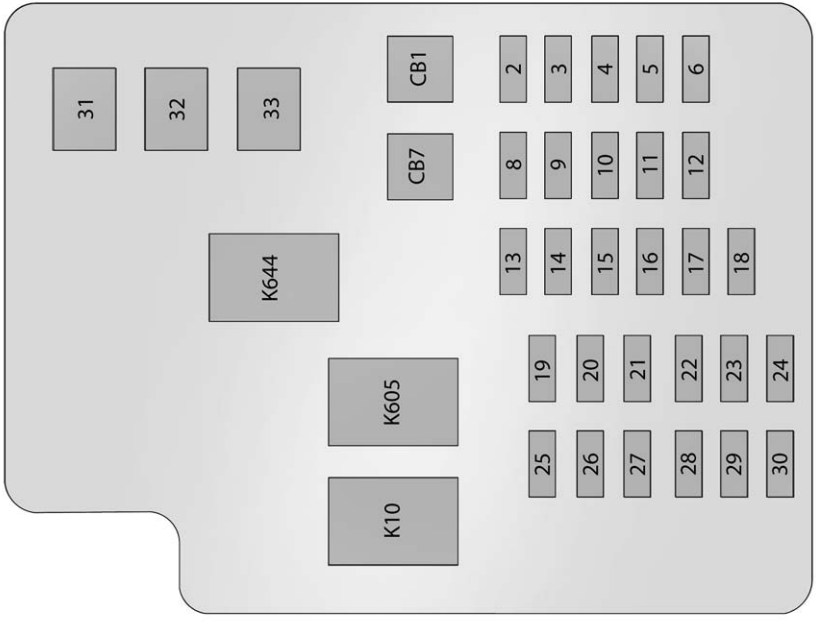


To access the fuses, remove the end panel by gently prying with a plastic tool near each clip, beginning at the point shown.



To install the end cover, insert the tabs on the back of the cover into the slots in the instrument panel at the points shown. Align the clips with the slots in the instrument panel, and press the cover into place.

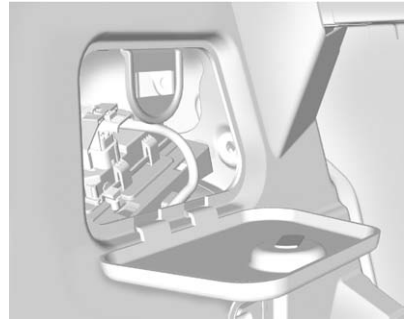
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses and relays shown.




| Item | Usage |
|---|---|
| 2 | Spare |
| 3 | Electric steering column lock |
| 4 | Spare |
| 5 | Heater, ventilation, and air conditioning control |
| 6 | Tilt and telescoping steering column |
| 8 | Data link connector |
| 9 | Spare |
| 10 | Shunt |
| 11 | Body control module 1 |
| 12 | Body control module 5 |
| 13 | Body control module 6 |
| 14 | Spare |
| 15 | Body control module 7 |
| 16 | Transmission control module |

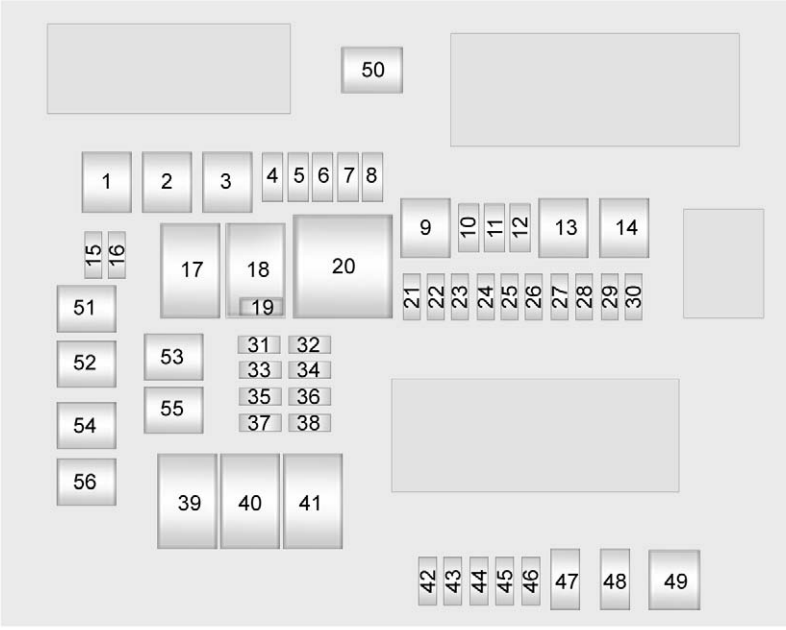
| Item | Usage |
|---|---|
| 17 | Spare |
| 18 | Spare |
| 19 | Spare |
| 20 | Spare |
| 21 | Spare |
| 22 | Sensing diagnostic module/Automatic occupant sensing |
| 23 | Radio/DVD/Heater, ventilation, and air conditioning control |
| 24 | Display |
| 25 | Heated steering wheel |
| 26 | Wireless charger |
| 27 | Steering wheel controls |
| 28 | Spare |
| 29 | Visor vanity lamp |
| 30 | Spare |
| 31 | Spare |
| 32 | Spare |
| 33 | Front heater, ventilation, and air conditioning blower |
| CB1 | Retained accessory power/Accessory power outlet |
| CB7 | Spare |
| K10 | Retained accessory power/Accessory |
| K605 | Logistics |
| K644 | Spare |

## Rear Compartment Fuse Block



The rear compartment fuse block is behind a cover on the driver side of the rear compartment.

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.




| Number | Usage |
|---|---|
| *1 | Rear driver control module/DC DC transformer |
| 2 | Left window |
| 3 | Body control module 8 |
| *4 | A/C inverter |
| 5 | Passive entry passive start battery 1 |
| 6 | Body control module 4 |
| 7 | Heated mirrors |
| 8 | Amplifier |
| 9 | Rear window defogger |
| 10 | Glass break |
| *11 | Trailer connector |
| 12 | OnStar (if equipped) |
| 13 | Right window |
| 14 | Electric parking brake |

| Number | Usage |
|---|---|
| 15 | Not used |
| 16 | Trunk release |
| *17 | Run relay |
| *18 | Logistics relay |
| *19 | Not used |
| 20 | Rear window defogger relay |
| 21 | Mirror window module |
| 22 | Spare |
| 23 | Canister vent |
| 24 | Body control module 2 |
| *25 | Rear vision camera |
| *26 | Front ventilated seats |
| *27 | SBZA/LDW/EOCM |
| *28 | Trailer/Sunshade |
| *29 | Rear heated seats |
| *30 | Semi-active damping system |
| *31 | Transfer case control module/Rear control drive module |
| 32 | Theft module/ Universal garage door opener/Rain sensor |
| *33 | UPA |
| *34 | Radio/DVD |
| 35 | Not used |
| *36 | Trailer |
| 37 | Fuel pump/Fuel system control module |
| 38 | Not used |
| 39 | Not used |
| 40 | Not used |
| 41 | Not used |
| *42 | Memory seat module |
| 43 | Body control module 3 |
| 44 | Not used |
| 45 | Battery regulated voltage control |
| 46 | Engine control module battery |
| 47 | Not used |
| 48 | Not used |
| *49 | Trailer module |
| 50 | Door lock security |
| 51 | Rear closure release |
| 52 | Spare |
| 53 | Not used |
| 54 | Door lock security |
| 55 | Not used |
| *56 | Fuel door |

* Optional

# Wheels and Tires

## Tires

Every new GM vehicle has high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. See the warranty manual for information regarding the tire warranty and where to get service. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer.

**⚠ Warning**

- Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.
- Overloading the tires can cause overheating as a result of too much flexing. There could be a blowout and a serious crash. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting crash could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when the tires are cold.
- Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured, or broken by a sudden impact — such as when hitting a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.
- Worn or old tires can cause a crash. If the tread is badly worn, replace them.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

- Replace any tires that have been damaged by impacts with potholes, curbs, etc.
- Improperly repaired tires can cause a crash. Only the dealer or an authorized tire service center should repair, replace, dismount, and mount the tires.
- Do not spin the tires in excess of 56 km/h (35 mph) on slippery surfaces such as snow, mud, ice, etc. Excessive spinning may cause the tires to explode.

See *Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation* ⇨ *341* for inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed driving.

## All-Season Tires

This vehicle may come with all-season tires. These tires are designed to provide good overall performance on most road surfaces and weather conditions. Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. Original equipment all-season tires can be identified by the last two characters of this TPC code, which will be “MS.”

Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on snow or ice-covered roads is expected. All-season tires provide adequate performance for most winter driving conditions, but they may not offer the same level of traction or performance as winter tires on snow or ice-covered roads. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *333*.

## Winter Tires

This vehicle was not originally equipped with winter tires. Winter tires are designed for increased traction on snow and ice-covered roads. Consider installing winter tires on the vehicle if frequent driving on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See your dealer for details regarding winter tire availability and proper tire selection. Also, see *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *348*.

With winter tires, there may be decreased dry road traction, increased road noise, and shorter tread life. After changing to winter tires, be alert for changes in vehicle handling and braking.

If using winter tires:

- Use tires of the same brand and tread type on all four wheel positions.
- Use only radial ply tires of the same size, load range, and speed rating as the original equipment tires.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, Y, and ZR speed rated tires. If winter tires with a lower speed rating are chosen, never exceed the tire's maximum speed capability.

## Run-Flat Tires

This vehicle, when new, may have had run-flat tires. There is no spare tire, no tire changing equipment, and no place to store a tire in the vehicle.

The vehicle also has a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) that indicates a loss of tire pressure in any of the tires.

**⚠ Warning**

If the low tire warning light displays on the instrument cluster, the handling capabilities will be reduced during severe maneuvers. Driving too fast could cause loss of control and you or others could be injured. Do not drive over 90 km/h (55 mph) when the low tire warning light is

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

displayed. Drive cautiously and check the tire pressures as soon as possible.

Run-flat tires can be driven on with no air pressure. There is no need to stop on the side of the road to change the tire. Continue driving; however, do not drive too far or too fast. Driving on the tire may not be possible if there is permanent damage. To prevent permanent damage, keep speed below 80 km/h (50 mph). With a light load the vehicle can be driven up to 100 km (60 mi); with a moderate load 80 km (50 mi); and a heavy load 45 km (25 mi). As soon as possible, contact the nearest authorized GM or run-flat servicing facility for inspection and repair or replacement.

When driving on a deflated run-flat tire, avoid potholes and other road hazards that could damage the tire and/or wheel beyond repair. When a tire has been damaged, or driven any distance while deflated, check with an authorized run-flat tire service center to determine whether the tire can be repaired or should be replaced. To maintain the run-flat feature, all replacement tires must be run-flat tires.

To locate the nearest GM or run-flat servicing facility, call Customer Assistance.

The valve stems on run-flat tires have sensors that are part of the TPMS. See *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *341*. These sensors contain batteries that are designed to last for 10 years under normal driving conditions. See your dealer for wheel or sensor replacement.

**Caution**

Using liquid sealants can damage the tire valves and tire pressure monitor sensors in the run-flat tires. This damage is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not use liquid sealants in run-flat tires.

## Self-Sealing Tires

This vehicle may have self-sealing tires. These tires have a material inside that can seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area. The tire may lose air pressure if the sidewall is damaged or the tread puncture is too large. If the Tire Pressure Monitor System indicates the tire pressure is low, inspect the tire for damage and inflate it to the recommended pressure. If the tire is unable to maintain the recommended pressure, contact the nearest authorized GM servicing facility immediately for inspection and repair or replacement. To locate the nearest GM servicing facility, call GM Customer Assistance.

**Caution**

Do not drive on a deflated self-sealing tire as this could damage the tire. Make sure the tire is inflated to the recommended pressure or have it immediately repaired or replaced.

When tire replacement is needed replace with a self-sealing tire, because the vehicle does not come with a spare tire or tire changing equipment.

## Summer Tires

This vehicle may come with high performance summer tires. These tires have a special tread and compound that are optimized for maximum dry and wet road performance. This special tread and compound will have decreased performance in cold climates, and on ice and snow. It is recommended that winter tires be installed on the vehicle if frequent driving at temperatures below approximately 5 °C (40 °F) or on ice or snow covered roads is expected. See *Winter Tires* ⇨ *333*.

**Caution**

High performance summer tires have rubber compounds that lose flexibility and may develop

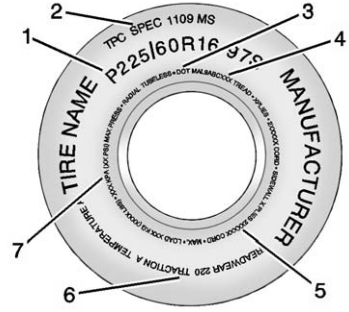
(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

surface cracks in the tread area at temperatures below −7 °C (20 °F). Always store high performance summer tires indoors and at temperatures above −7 °C (20 °F) when not in use. If the tires have been subjected to −7 °C (20 °F) or less, let them warm up in a heated space to at least 5 °C (40 °F) for 24 hours or more before being installed or driving a vehicle on which they are installed. Do not apply heat or blow heated air directly on the tires. Always inspect tires before use. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *345*.

## Tire Sidewall Labeling

Useful information about a tire is molded into its sidewall. The examples show a typical passenger tire sidewall.




**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire Example**

**(1) Tire Size :** The tire size is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type, and service description. See the “Tire Size” illustration later in this section for more detail.

**(2) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification) :** Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall.

GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

**(3) DOT (Department of Transportation) :** The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

**DOT Tire Date of Manufacture :** The last four digits of the TIN indicate the tire manufactured date. The first two digits represent the week (01-52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

**(4) Tire Identification Number (TIN) :** The letters and numbers following the DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

**(5) Tire Ply Material :** The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

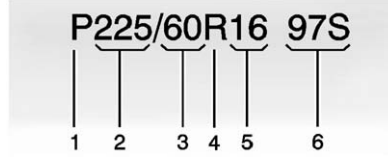
**(6) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) :** Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. For more information see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *349*.

**(7) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit :** Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load.

## Tire Designations

### Tire Size

The following is an example of a typical passenger vehicle tire size.




**(1) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire :** The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

**(2) Tire Width :** The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

**(3) Aspect Ratio :** A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 60, as shown in item 3 of the illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 60 percent as high as it is wide.

**(4) Construction Code :** A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

**(5) Rim Diameter :** Diameter of the wheel in inches.

**(6) Service Description :** These characters represent the load index and speed rating of the tire. The load index represents the load carrying capacity a tire is certified to carry. The speed rating is the maximum speed a tire is certified to carry a load.

## Tire Terminology and Definitions

**Air Pressure :** The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch).

**Accessory Weight :** The combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are automatic transmission, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

**Aspect Ratio :** The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

**Belt :** A rubber coated layer of cords between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

**Bead :** The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

**Bias Ply Tire :** A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Cold Tire Pressure :** The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in kPa (kilopascal) or psi (pounds per square inch) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

**Curb Weight :** The weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

**DOT Markings :** A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S.

Department of Transportation (DOT) Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand, and date of production.

**GVWR :** Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**GAWR FRT :** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**GAWR RR :** Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**Intended Outboard Sidewall :** The side of an asymmetrical tire that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

**Kilopascal (kPa) :** The metric unit for air pressure.

**Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire :** A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

**Load Index :** An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

**Maximum Inflation Pressure :** The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire can be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

**Maximum Load Rating :** The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

**Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight :** The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, and production options weight.

**Normal Occupant Weight :** The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb). See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**Occupant Distribution :** Designated seating positions.

**Outward Facing Sidewall :** The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

**Passenger (P-Metric) Tire :** A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

**Recommended Inflation Pressure :** Vehicle manufacturer's recommended

tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**Radial Ply Tire :** A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

**Rim :** A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Sidewall :** The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

**Speed Rating :** An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

**Traction :** The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

**Tread :** The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

**Treadwear Indicators :** Narrow bands, sometimes called wear bars, that show across the tread of a tire when only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *347*.

**UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards) :** A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading* ⇨ *349*.

**Vehicle Capacity Weight :** The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 68 kg (150 lb) plus the rated cargo load. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

**Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire :** Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

**Vehicle Placard :** A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See “Tire and Loading Information Label” under *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

## Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

**Caution**

Neither tire underinflation nor overinflation is good. Underinflated tires, or tires that do not have enough air, can result in:

- Tire overloading and overheating which could lead to a blowout.
- Premature or irregular wear.
- Poor handling.
- Reduced fuel economy.

Overinflated tires, or tires that have too much air, can result in:

- Unusual wear.
- Poor handling.
- Rough ride.
- Needless damage from road hazards.

The Tire and Loading Information label on the vehicle indicates the original equipment tires and the correct cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended pressure is the minimum air pressure needed to support the vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

How the vehicle is loaded affects vehicle handling and ride comfort. Never load the vehicle with more weight than it was designed to carry.

**When to Check**

Check the tires once a month or more.

**How to Check**

Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to check the tire pressure. Proper tire inflation cannot be determined by looking at the tire. Check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, meaning the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours or no more than 1.6 km (1 mi).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gauge firmly onto the valve to get the pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary.

If the inflation pressure is low, add air until the recommended pressure is reached. If the inflation pressure in high, press on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve to release air. Re-check the tire pressure with the tire gauge.

Put the valve caps back on the valve stems to keep out dirt and moisture and prevent leaks. Use only valve caps designed for the vehicle by GM. TPMS sensors

could be damaged and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

## Tire Pressure for High-Speed Operation

**⚠ Warning**

Driving at high speeds, 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher, puts additional strain on tires. Sustained high-speed driving causes excessive heat buildup and can cause sudden tire failure. This could cause a crash, and you or others could be killed. Some high-speed rated tires require inflation pressure adjustment for high-speed operation. When speed limits and road conditions allow the vehicle to be driven at high speeds, make sure the tires are rated for high-speed operation, are in excellent condition, and are set to the correct cold tire inflation pressure for the vehicle load.

Vehicles with P225/45R17 90V and 225/40R18 92V size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to 280 kPa (41 psi).

Vehicles with 225/40RF18 88W and 255/35RF18 90W or 255/35ZR18 (94Y) and 275/35ZR18 (99Y) size tires require inflation pressure adjustment when driving the vehicle at speeds of 160 km/h (100 mph) or higher. Set the cold tire inflation pressure to 300 kPa (44 psi).

Sustained operation at speeds over 160 km/h (100 mph) requires a load limit of the driver and one passenger, with no additional cargo. When loaded above this level, up to the GVW, do not operate the vehicle above 160 km/h (100 mph).

Return the tires to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure when high-speed driving has ended. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226* and *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

## Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in your tires and transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

## Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS). The TPMS is designed to warn the driver when a low tire pressure condition exists. TPMS sensors are mounted onto each tire and wheel assembly, excluding the spare tire and wheel assembly. The TPMS sensors monitor the air pressure in the tires and transmits the tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPMS illuminates the low tire pressure warning light on the instrument cluster. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure

shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

A message to check the pressure in a specific tire displays in the Driver Information Center (DIC). The low tire pressure warning light and the DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure. Using the DIC, tire pressure levels can be viewed. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays see *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This could be an early indicator that the air pressure is getting low and needs to be inflated to the proper pressure.

A Tire and Loading Information label, attached to your vehicle, shows the size of the original equipment tires and the correct inflation pressure for the tires when they are cold. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*, for an example of the Tire and Loading Information label and its location. Also see *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

The TPMS can warn about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *345*, *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *345* and *Tires* ⇨ *332*.

**Caution**

Tire sealant materials are not all the same. A non-approved tire sealant could damage the TPMS sensors. TPMS sensor damage caused by using an incorrect tire sealant is not covered by the vehicle warranty. Always use only the GM approved tire sealant available through your dealer or included in the vehicle.

Factory-installed Tire Inflator Kits use a GM approved liquid tire sealant. Using non-approved tire sealants could damage the TPMS sensors. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *354* for information regarding the inflator kit materials and instructions.

### TPMS Malfunction Light and Message

The TPMS will not function properly if one or more of the TPMS sensors are missing or inoperable. When the system detects a malfunction, the low tire warning light flashes for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle. A DIC warning message also displays. The malfunction light and DIC warning message come on at each ignition cycle until the problem is corrected. Some of the conditions that can cause these to come on are:

- One of the road tires has been replaced with the spare tire. The spare tire does not have a TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and DIC message should go off after the road tire is replaced and the sensor matching process is performed

successfully. See “TPMS Sensor Matching Process” later in this section.

- The TPMS sensor matching process was not done or not completed successfully after rotating the tires. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off after successfully completing the sensor matching process. See "TPMS Sensor Matching Process" later in this section.
- One or more TPMS sensors are missing or damaged. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off when the TPMS sensors are installed and the sensor matching process is performed successfully. See your dealer for service.
- Replacement tires or wheels do not match the original equipment tires or wheels. Tires and wheels other than those recommended could prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *348*.
- Operating electronic devices or being near facilities using radio wave frequencies similar to the TPMS could cause the TPMS sensors to malfunction.

If the TPMS is not functioning properly it cannot detect or signal a low tire condition. See your dealer for service if the TPMS malfunction light and DIC message comes on and stays on.

## TPMS Sensor Matching Process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code needs to be matched to a new tire/wheel position after rotating the vehicle’s tires or replacing one or more of the TPMS sensors. The TPMS sensor matching process should also be performed after replacing a spare tire with a road tire containing the TPMS sensor. The malfunction light and the DIC message should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: driver side front tire, passenger side front tire, passenger side rear tire, and driver side rear. See your dealer for service or to purchase a relearn tool. A TPMS relearn tool can also be purchased. See Tire Pressure Monitor Sensor Activation Tool at www.gmtoolsandequipment.com or call 1-800-GM TOOLS (1-800-468-6657).

There are two minutes to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Place the vehicle power mode in ON/RUN/START. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *230*.
3. Make sure the Tire Pressure info display option is turned on. The info displays on the DIC can be turned on and off

through the Settings menu. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.

4. Use the five-way DIC control on the right side of the steering wheel to scroll to the Tire Pressure screen under the DIC info page. See *Driver Information Center (DIC)* ⇨ *130*.
5. Press and hold SEL in the center of the five-way DIC control.

   The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode and the TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message displays on the DIC screen.
6. Start with the driver side front tire.
7. Place the relearn tool against the tire sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position.
8. Proceed to the passenger side front tire, and repeat Step 7.
9. Proceed to the passenger side rear tire, and repeat Step 7.
10. Proceed to the driver side rear tire, and repeat Step 7. The horn sounds two times to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the driver side rear tire, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active. The TIRE LEARNING ACTIVE message on the DIC display screen goes off.
11. Shut the ignition off.
12. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.

## Tire Inspection

We recommend that the tires, including the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, be inspected for signs of wear or damage at least once a month.

Replace the tire if:

- The indicators at three or more places around the tire can be seen.
- There is cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut, or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge, or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut, or other damage that cannot be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

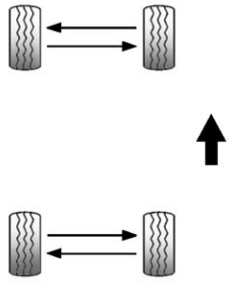
## Tire Rotation

If the vehicle has non-directional tires, they should be rotated every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. See *Maintenance Schedule* ⇨ *379*.

Tires are rotated to achieve a uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

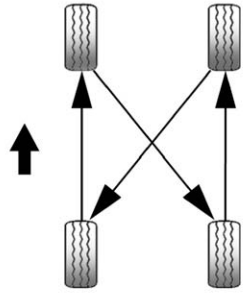
Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible, check for proper tire inflation pressure, and check for damaged tires or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment. See *When It Is Time for New Tires* ⇨ *347* and *Wheel Replacement* ⇨ *351*.

Directional tires should not be rotated. Each tire and wheel should be used only in the position it is in. Directional tires will have an arrow on the tire indicating the proper direction of rotation or will have “left” or “right” molded on the sidewall.



Use this rotation pattern if the vehicle has different size tires on the front and rear and they are non-directional.

Different tire sizes should not be rotated front to rear.



Use this rotation pattern when rotating tires of the same size installed on all four wheel positions.

If the vehicle has a compact spare tire, do not include it in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label after the tires have been rotated. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339* and *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *394*.

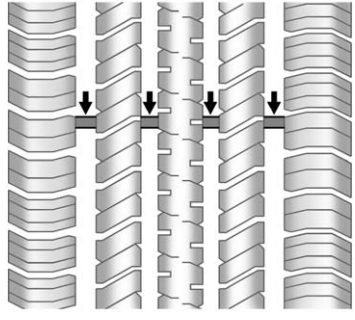
**⚠ Warning**

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

## When It Is Time for New Tires

Factors such as maintenance, temperatures, driving speeds, vehicle loading, and road conditions affect the wear rate of the tires.



Treadwear indicators are one way to tell when it is time for new tires. Treadwear indicators appear when the tires have only 1.6 mm (1/16 in) or less of tread remaining. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *345* and *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *345*.

The rubber in tires ages over time. This also applies to the spare tire, if the vehicle has one, even if it is never used. Multiple factors including temperatures, loading conditions, and inflation pressure maintenance affect how fast aging takes place. GM recommends that tires, including the spare if equipped, be replaced after six years, regardless of tread wear. The tire manufacture date is the last four digits of the DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) which is molded into one side of the tire sidewall. The first two digits represent the week (01–52) and the last two digits, the year. For example, the third week of the year 2010 would have a four-digit DOT date of 0310.

### Vehicle Storage

Tires age when stored normally mounted on a parked vehicle. Park a vehicle that will be stored for at least a month in a cool, dry, clean area away from direct sunlight to

slow aging. This area should be free of grease, gasoline, or other substances that can deteriorate rubber.

Parking for an extended period can cause flat spots on the tires that may result in vibrations while driving. When storing a vehicle for at least a month, remove the tires or raise the vehicle to reduce the weight from the tires.

## Buying New Tires

GM has developed and matched specific tires for the vehicle. The original equipment tires installed were designed to meet General Motors Tire Performance Criteria Specification (TPC Spec) system rating. When replacement tires are needed, GM strongly recommends buying tires with the same TPC Spec rating.

GM's exclusive TPC Spec system considers over a dozen critical specifications that impact the overall performance of the vehicle, including brake system performance, ride and handling, traction control, and tire pressure monitoring performance. GM's TPC Spec number is molded onto the tire's sidewall near the tire size. If the tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC Spec number will be followed by MS for mud and snow. See *Tire Sidewall Labeling* ⇨ *335*, for additional information.

GM recommends replacing worn tires in complete sets of four. Uniform tread depth on all tires will help to maintain the performance of the vehicle. Braking and handling performance may be adversely affected if all the tires are not replaced at the same time. If proper rotation and maintenance have been done, all four tires should wear out at about the same time. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *345* for information on proper tire rotation. However, if it is necessary to replace only one axle set of worn tires, place the new tires on the rear axle.

Winter tires with the same speed rating as the original equipment tires may not be available for H, V, W, and ZR speed rated tires. Never exceed the winter tire's maximum speed capability when using winter tires with a lower speed rating.

**⚠ Warning**

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

**⚠ Warning**

Mixing tires of different sizes (other than those originally installed on the vehicle), brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tire on all four wheels.

**⚠ Warning**

Using bias-ply tires on the vehicle may cause the wheel rim flanges to develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly and cause a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on the vehicle.

If the vehicle tires must be replaced with a tire that does not have a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating, and construction (radial) as the original tires.

Vehicles that have a tire pressure monitoring system could give an inaccurate low-pressure warning if non-TPC Spec rated tires are installed. See *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *342*.

The Tire and Loading Information label indicates the original equipment tires on the vehicle. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.

## Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

**⚠ Warning**

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

See *Buying New Tires* ⇨ *348* and *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *291*.

## Uniform Tire Quality Grading

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway

Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), which grades tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance. This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States. The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG) system does not apply to deep tread, winter tires, compact spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

All Passenger Car Tires Must Conform to Federal Safety Requirements In Addition To These Grades.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance

to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law. Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance. Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing are not necessary on a regular basis. Consider an alignment check if there is unusual tire wear or the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

## Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it.

Some aluminum wheels can be repaired. See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel that is needed.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, and offset, and should be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

Replace wheels, wheel bolts, wheel nuts, or Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensors with new GM original equipment parts.

**⚠ Warning**

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts, or wheel nuts can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of the vehicle. Tires can lose air, and cause loss of control, causing a crash. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts, and wheel nuts for replacement.

**Caution**

The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance, and tire clearance to the body and chassis.

**⚠ Warning**

Never use oil or grease on studs or the threads of the wheel nuts. The wheel nuts might come loose and the wheel could fall off, causing a crash.

**⚠ Warning**

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to become loose and even come off. This could lead to

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

a crash. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts.

**Caution**

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification.

### Used Replacement Wheels

**⚠ Warning**

Replacing a wheel with a used one is dangerous. How it has been used or how far it has been driven may be unknown. It could

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

fail suddenly and cause a crash. When replacing wheels, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

## Tire Chains

**⚠ Warning**

If the vehicle has 225/40R18, 225/40RF18, 255/35RF18, 225/35R19, or 255/30R19 size tires, do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension, or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause loss of control and a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for the vehicle's tire size combination

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To avoid vehicle damage, drive slow and readjust or remove the traction device if it contacts the vehicle. Do not spin the wheels. If traction devices are used, install them on the rear tires.

**Caution**

If the vehicle is equipped with a tire size other than 225/40R18, 225/40RF18, 255/35RF18, 225/35R19, or 255/30R19, use tire chains only where legal and only when necessary. Use low profile chains that add no more than 12 mm thickness to the tire tread and inner sidewall. Use chains that are the proper size for the tires. Install them on the tires of the rear axle. Don't use chains on the tires of the front axle. Tighten

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

them as tightly as possible with the ends securely fastened. Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions. If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.

## If a Tire Goes Flat

If the vehicle has run-flat tires, there is no need to stop on the side of the road to change a flat tire. See *Run-Flat Tires* ⇨ *333*.

**⚠ Warning**

Special tools and procedures are required to service a run-flat tire. If these special tools and procedures are not used, injury or vehicle damage may occur.

(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

Always be sure the proper tools and procedures, as described in the service manual, are used.

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. See *Tires* ⇨ *332*. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be

very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

**⚠ Warning**

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If this vehicle does not have run-flat tires and a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible.

1. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *164*.
2. Set the parking brake firmly.
3. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
4. Turn off the ignition.
5. Inspect the flat tire.

**⚠ Warning**

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

If this vehicle has a tire sealant kit and the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a puncture larger than 6 mm (0.25 in), the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. If the tire has a puncture less than 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire, see *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *354*.

## Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

**⚠ Warning**

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. For more information, see *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *238*.

**⚠ Warning**

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

**⚠ Warning**

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

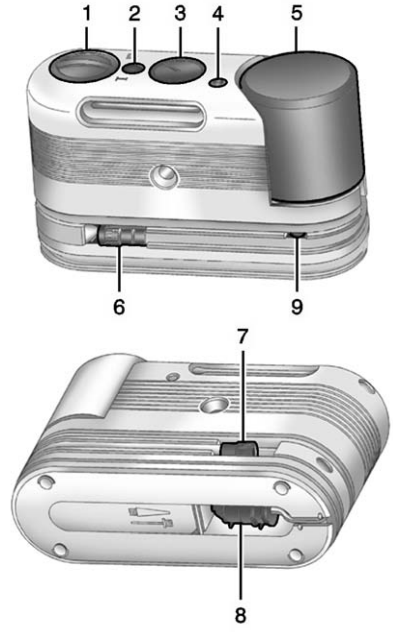
If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire or tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an underinflated tire.

If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:




1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button

3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button
5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

## Tire Sealant

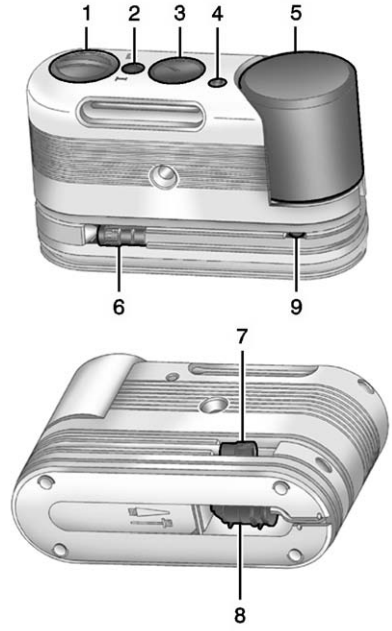
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

## Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire

Follow the directions closely for correct sealant usage.




1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button

5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *164*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *353* for other important safety warnings.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *361*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (6) onto the tire valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *110*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) counterclockwise to the Sealant + Air position.
9. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

   The pressure gauge (3) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor

is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

**Caution**

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire, therefore, Steps 12–18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Turn the sealant/air hose (6) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
14. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
15. Replace the sealant/air hose (6), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.

16. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location. Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired or replaced.
17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
19. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1–11 under “Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured).”

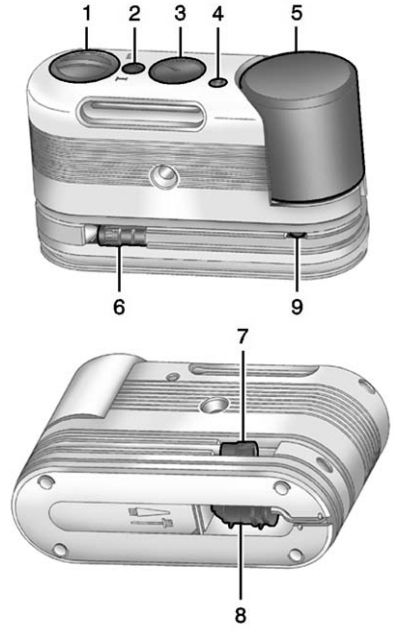
    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire. See *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended inflation pressure, inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire, and vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (6) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local state codes and practices.
22. Replace with a new canister assembly available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing the tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

### Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tire with air only and not sealant:




1. Selector Switch (Sealant/Air or Air Only)
2. On/Off Button
3. Pressure Gauge
4. Pressure Deflation Button

5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear)
7. Air Only Hose (Black)
8. Power Plug
9. Canister Release Button (Under Sealant/Air Hose)

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *164*.

See *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *353* for other important safety warnings.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. See *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *361*.
2. Unwrap the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tire valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (7) onto the tire valve stem by turning it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *110*.

   If the vehicle has an accessory power outlet, do not use the cigarette lighter.

   If the vehicle only has a cigarette lighter, use the cigarette lighter.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.
8. Press and turn the selector switch (1) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (3). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.

    The pressure gauge (3) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

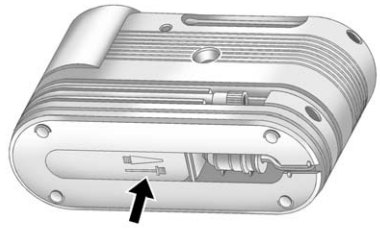
    If you inflate the tire higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached.

This option is only functional when using the air only hose (7).

11. Press the on/off button (2) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Disconnect the air only hose (7) from the tire valve stem, by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tire valve stem cap.
14. Replace the air only hose (7) and the power plug (8) and cord back in its original location.
15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



The tire sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

### Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

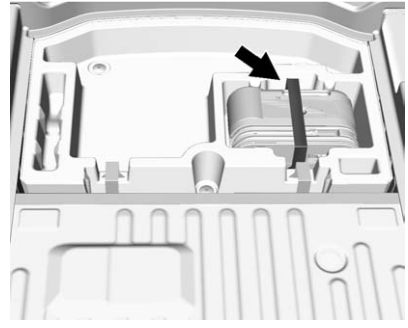
To remove the sealant canister:

1. Unwrap the sealant hose.
2. Press the canister release button (9).
3. Pull up and remove the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Push the new canister into place.

## Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

To access the tire sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the trunk. See *Trunk* ⇨ *42*.
2. Lift the cover.



3. Remove the strap.

4. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit.

To store the tire sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

# Jump Starting

## Jump Starting - North America

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery - North America* ⇨ *316*.

For the LF4 only, there is an optional low mass battery that can be used for Track events. If the vehicle has the low mass battery installed and the battery has a low State of Charge (SOC), the vehicle can be jump started the say way as if the regular battery was in the vehicle using the following procedure. For more information on the low mass battery, see *Battery - North America* ⇨ *316* and *Track Events and Competitive Driving* ⇨ *218*.

If the battery has run down, try to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

**⚠ Warning**

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. **WASH HANDS AFTER HANDLING.** See *California Proposition 65 Warning* ⇨ *291*.

**⚠ Warning**

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

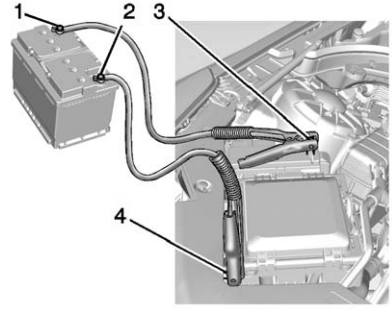
(Continued)

**Warning (Continued)**

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

**Caution**

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.




1. Good Battery Positive Post
2. Good Battery Negative Post
3. Discharged Battery Positive Post
4. Discharged Battery Negative Grounding Point

The jump start positive post (1) and negative post (2) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The jump start positive post (3) and the negative grounding point (4) for the discharged battery are on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a red cover. Remove the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

**Caution**

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. See *Shifting Into Park (Automatic Transmission)* ⇨ *235* with an automatic transmission, or *Parking* ⇨ *237* with a manual transmission.

**Caution**

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Set the ignition to OFF. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

**⚠ Warning**

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

**⚠ Warning**

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

**⚠ Warning**

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery.
8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) grounding point for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

**Caution**

If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

**Jumper Cable Removal**

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

After starting the disabled vehicle and removing the jumper cables, allow it to idle for several minutes.

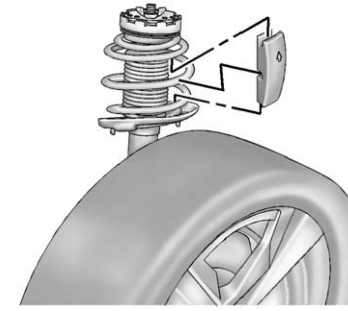
# Towing the Vehicle

**Caution**

Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Do not lash or hook to suspension components. Use the proper straps around the tires to secure the vehicle.

Have the vehicle towed on a flatbed car carrier. A wheel lift tow truck could damage the vehicle.



Due to low ramp angles on the V-Series only, use care when loading the vehicle onto a flatbed carrier. Front spring spacers were provided for lifting the front suspension if more clearance is necessary when towing.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Use the tow eye for towing a disabled vehicle or loading it onto a flatbed car carrier. The tow eye should not be used to recover a vehicle from an off road situation.

**Caution**

Improper use of the tow eye can cause vehicle damage. Use caution and low speeds to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Carefully open the cover in the fascia by using the small notch that conceals the tow eye socket.

Install the tow eye into the socket by turning it clockwise until it stops. When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

## Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle, such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

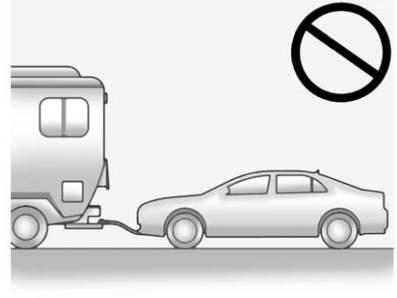
Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

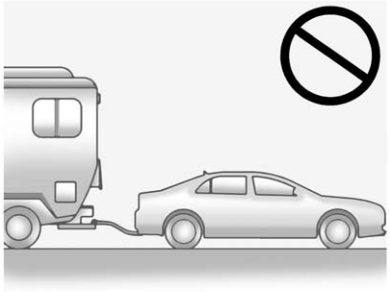
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be traveled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

**Caution**

Use of a shield mounted in front of the vehicle grille could restrict airflow and cause damage to the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If using a shield, only use one that attaches to the towing vehicle.

### Dinghy Towing



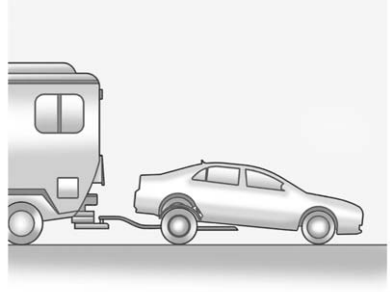


**Caution**

If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the drivetrain components could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not tow the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground.

The vehicle was not designed to be towed with all four wheels on the ground. If a rear-wheel-drive vehicle must be towed, a dolly or a trailer should be used. If an all-wheel-drive vehicle must be towed, a trailer should be used. See “Dolly Towing” following.

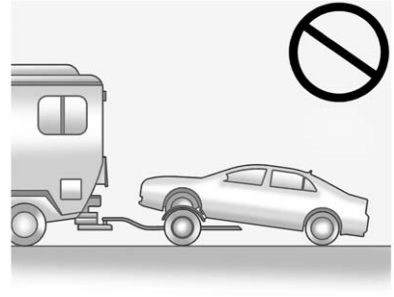
## Dolly Towing (Rear-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)

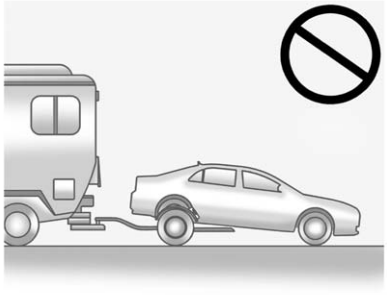


To dolly tow a rear-wheel-drive vehicle from the rear:

1. Attach the dolly to the tow vehicle following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Put the rear wheels on the dolly.
3. Firmly set the parking brake. See *Parking Brake (Electric)* ⇨ *246* or *Parking Brake (Manual)* ⇨ *248*.
4. Put the vehicle in P (Park).
5. Securely attach the vehicle being towed to the dolly.
6. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
7. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.

## Dolly Towing (All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)





**Caution**

Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle with any of its wheels on the ground.

All-wheel-drive vehicles can only be towed with all four wheels on a trailer.

# Appearance Care

## Exterior Care

### Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

### Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

**Caution**

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

**Caution**

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

The symbol is on any underhood compartment electrical center that should not be power washed. This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

## Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

**Caution**

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

### Carbon Fiber Care

Carbon fiber parts can be washed and waxed like any other parts. Use a clear or black pigmented wax. See *Carbon Fiber* ⇨ *230*.

### Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Moldings

**Caution**

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal moldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal moldings on the vehicle are aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the molding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use only approved cleaning solutions for aluminum, chrome or stainless steel. Some

cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the moldings.

- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the molding finish.

### Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses, Emblems, Decals, and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems, decals, and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating. Do not clean or wipe them when dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.
- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

**Caution**

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

**Caution**

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

### Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the hood and windshield, when washing the vehicle.

### Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

### Weatherstrips

Apply Dielectric silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389*.

### Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

**Caution**

Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

### Wheels and Trim — Aluminum or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

**Caution**

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

**Caution**

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Brake System

Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect drum brake linings/shoes for wear or cracks. Inspect other brake parts, including drums, wheel cylinders, calipers, parking brake, master cylinder, brake fluid reservoir, vacuum pipes, electric vacuum pump including bracket and vent hose, if equipped.

### Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

### Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, and the steel fuel door hinge, unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

### Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, spring and fall, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to thoroughly clean any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced

### Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

### Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

### Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

## Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer color to the vehicle’s interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls. Remove cleaners quickly.

Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.8 L (1 gal) of water. A concentrated soap solution will create streaks and attract dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

### Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

**Caution**

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windshield with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

### Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

### Coated Moldings

Coated moldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

### Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colorfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

### Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

Use a microfiber cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfiber cloth. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

**Caution**

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces, and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

**Caution**

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage.

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

**Caution**

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in

(Continued)

**Caution (Continued)**

the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

### Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

### Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

## Floor Mats

**⚠ Warning**

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

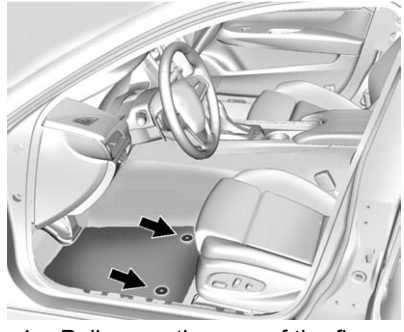
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the pedals. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

The floor mats are held in place by button-type retainers.

## Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats



1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock the retainers and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place. Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

# Service and Maintenance

**General Information**
General Information . . . . . 377

**Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance**
Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance . . . . . 379

**Maintenance Schedule**
Maintenance Schedule . . . . . 379

**Special Application Services**
Special Application Services . . . . . 385

**Additional Maintenance and Care**
Additional Maintenance and Care . . . . . 386

**Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts**
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants . . . . . 389
Maintenance Replacement Parts . . . . . 391

**Maintenance Records**
Maintenance Records . . . . . 392

## General Information

Your vehicle is an important investment. This section describes the required maintenance for the vehicle. Follow this schedule to help protect against major repair expenses resulting from neglect or inadequate maintenance. It may also help to maintain the value of the vehicle if it is sold. It is the responsibility of the owner to have all required maintenance performed.

Your dealer has trained technicians who can perform required maintenance using genuine replacement parts. They have up-to-date tools and equipment for fast and accurate diagnostics. Many dealers have extended evening and Saturday hours, courtesy transportation, and online scheduling to assist with service needs.

Your dealer recognizes the importance of providing competitively priced maintenance and repair services. With trained technicians, the dealer is the place for routine maintenance such as oil

changes and tire rotations and additional maintenance items like tires, brakes, batteries, and wiper blades.

**Caution**

Damage caused by improper maintenance can lead to costly repairs and may not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, recommended fluids, and lubricants are important to keep the vehicle in good working condition.

The Tire Rotation and Required Services are the responsibility of the vehicle owner. It is recommended to have your dealer perform these services every 12 000 km/7,500 mi. Proper vehicle maintenance helps to keep the vehicle in good working condition, improves fuel economy, and reduces vehicle emissions.

Because of the way people use vehicles, maintenance needs vary. There may need to be more frequent checks and services. The Additional Required Services - Normal are for vehicles that:

- Carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits on the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *226*.
- Are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- Use the recommended fuel. See *Fuel* ⇨ *279*.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal chart.

The Additional Required Services - Severe are for vehicles that are:

- Mainly driven in heavy city traffic in hot weather.
- Mainly driven in hilly or mountainous terrain.
- Frequently towing a trailer.
- Used for high speed or competitive driving.
- Used for taxi, police, or delivery service.

Refer to the information in the Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe chart.

**⚠ Warning**

Performing maintenance work can be dangerous and can cause serious injury. Perform maintenance work only if the required information, proper tools, and equipment are available.
If they are not, see your dealer to have a trained technician do the work. See *Doing Your Own Service Work* ⇨ *292*.

# Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance

Your vehicle comes with the Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance. It is a maintenance program that covers select maintenance services during the first 4 years or 80 000 km (50,000 mi), whichever comes first.

Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance covers routine maintenance services, when scheduled in accordance with the owner manual, including:

- Oil changes based on the vehicle's oil life monitor system.
- Tire rotation every 12 000 km (7,500 mi).
- Engine air cleaner filter replacement.
- Passenger compartment air filter replacement.
- Multi-point vehicle inspection (MPVI) performed by a qualified technician.

Cadillac requires that all Cadillac Premium Care Maintenance services be performed by a Cadillac authorized service dealer.

# Maintenance Schedule

## Owner Checks and Services

### At Each Fuel Stop

- Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*.

### Once a Month

- Check the tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.
- Inspect the tires for wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *345*.
- Check the windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.

## Engine Oil Change

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message displays, have the engine oil and filter changed within the next 1 000 km/600 mi. If driven under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate the need for vehicle service for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once

a year and the oil life system must be reset. Your trained dealer technician can perform this work. If the engine oil life system is reset accidentally, service the vehicle within 5 000 km/3,000 mi since the last service. Reset the oil life system when the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*.

### Tire Rotation and Required Services Every 12 000 km/ 7,500 mi

Rotate the tires, if recommended for the vehicle, and perform the following services. See *Tire Rotation* ⇨ *345*.

- Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. If needed, change engine oil and filter, and reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301* and *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *303*.
- Check engine coolant level. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *309*.
- Check windshield washer fluid level. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *313*.
- Visually inspect windshield wiper blades for wear, cracking, or contamination. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*. Replace worn or damaged wiper blades. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *319*.
- Check tire inflation pressures. See *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *339*.
- Inspect tire wear. See *Tire Inspection* ⇨ *345*.
- Visually check for fluid leaks.
- Inspect engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *306*.
- Inspect brake system. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Check restraint system components. See *Safety System Check* ⇨ *70*.
- Visually inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.
- Visually inspect exhaust system and nearby heat shields for loose or damaged parts.
- Lubricate body components. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.
- Check starter switch. See *Starter Switch Check* ⇨ *318*.
- Check automatic transmission shift lock control function. See *Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control Function Check* ⇨ *318*.
- Check parking brake and automatic transmission park mechanism. See *Park Brake and P (Park) Mechanism Check* ⇨ *319*.

- Check accelerator pedal for damage, high effort, or binding. Replace if needed.
- Visually inspect gas strut for signs of wear, cracks, or other damage. Check the hold open ability of the strut. See your dealer if service is required.
- Check tire sealant expiration date, if equipped. See *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *354*.
- Inspect sunroof track and seal, if equipped. See *Sunroof* ⇨ *52*.

| Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal | 12 000 km/7,500 mi | 24 000 km/15,000 mi | 36 000 km/22,500 mi | 48 000 km/30,000 mi | 60 000 km/37,500 mi | 72 000 km/45,000 mi | 84 000 km/52,500 mi | 96 000 km/60,000 mi | 108 000 km/67,500 mi | 120 000 km/75,000 mi | 132 000 km/82,500 mi | 144 000 km/90,000 mi | 156 000 km/97,500 mi | 168 000 km/105,000 mi | 180 000 km/112,500 mi | 192 000 km/120,000 mi | 204 000 km/127,500 mi | 216 000 km/135,000 mi | 228 000 km/142,500 mi | 240 000 km/150,000 mi |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed. | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1) | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | |
| Inspect evaporative control system. (2) | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| ATS-V Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3) | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | |
| Except ATS-V: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3) | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| Change rear axle fluid, if equipped with limited slip differential. | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| 2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | |
| Except 2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| Drain and fill engine cooling system. (4) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ |
| Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (5) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ |
| Replace brake/clutch fluid. (6) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Normal**

**(1)** Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

**(2)** Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition.

**(3)** Or every four years, whichever comes first. If driving in dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each oil change or more often as needed.

**(4)** Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.

**(5)** Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

**(6)** Replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *315*.

| Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe | 12 000 km/7,500 mi | 24 000 km/15,000 mi | 36 000 km/22,500 mi | 48 000 km/30,000 mi | 60 000 km/37,500 mi | 72 000 km/45,000 mi | 84 000 km/52,500 mi | 96 000 km/60,000 mi | 108 000 km/67,500 mi | 120 000 km/75,000 mi | 132 000 km/82,500 mi | 144 000 km/90,000 mi | 156 000 km/97,500 mi | 168 000 km/105,000 mi | 180 000 km/112,500 mi | 192 000 km/120,000 mi | 204 000 km/127,500 mi | 216 000 km/135,000 mi | 228 000 km/142,500 mi | 240 000 km/150,000 mi |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Rotate tires and perform Required Services. Check engine oil level and oil life percentage. Change engine oil and filter, if needed. | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ | ✓ |
| Replace passenger compartment air filter. (1) | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | |
| Inspect evaporative control system. (2) | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| ATS-V Only: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3) | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | | ✓ | | |
| Except ATS-V: Replace engine air cleaner filter. (3) | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| Change automatic transmission fluid and filter. | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| Change manual transmission fluid. | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| Change transfer case fluid, if equipped with AWD. (4) | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| Change rear axle fluid. | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | ✓ | | |
| 2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine Only: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | |
| Except 2.0L or 3.6L Twin Turbo Engine: Replace spark plugs. Inspect spark plug wires. | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ | | | | | | | |
| Drain and fill engine cooling system. (5) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ |
| Visually inspect accessory drive belts. (6) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | ✓ |
| Replace brake/clutch fluid. (7) | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

**Footnotes — Maintenance Schedule Additional Required Services - Severe**

**(1)** Or every two years, whichever comes first. More frequent passenger compartment air filter replacement may be needed if driving in areas with heavy traffic, poor air quality, high dust levels, or environmental allergens. Passenger compartment air filter replacement may also be needed if there is reduced airflow, window fogging, or odors. Your GM dealer can help determine when to replace the filter.

**(2)** Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing, and condition.

**(3)** Or every four years, whichever comes first. If driving in dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each oil change or more often as needed.

**(4)** Do not directly power wash the transfer case and/or front/rear axle output seals. High pressure water can overcome the seals and contaminate the transfer case fluid. Contaminated fluid will decrease the life of the transfer case and/or axles and should be replaced.

**(5)** Or every five years, whichever comes first. See *Cooling System (Engine)* ⇨ *307* or *Cooling System (Intercooler)* ⇨ *309*.

**(6)** Or every 10 years, whichever comes first. Inspect for fraying, excessive cracking, or damage; replace, if needed.

**(7)** Replace brake fluid every five years. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *315*.

# Special Application Services

- Severe Commercial Use Vehicles Only: Lubricate chassis components every 5 000 km/ 3,000 mi.
- Have underbody flushing service performed. See "Underbody Maintenance" in *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.

# Additional Maintenance and Care

Your vehicle is an important investment and caring for it properly may help to avoid future costly repairs. To maintain vehicle performance, additional maintenance services may be required.

It is recommended that your dealer perform these services — their trained dealer technicians know your vehicle best. Your dealer can also perform a thorough assessment with a multi-point inspection to recommend when your vehicle may need attention.

The following list is intended to explain the services and conditions to look for that may indicate services are required.

**Battery**

The 12-volt battery supplies power to start the engine and operate any additional electrical accessories.

- To avoid break-down or failure to start the vehicle, maintain a battery with full cranking power.
- Trained dealer technicians have the diagnostic equipment to test the battery and ensure that the connections and cables are corrosion-free.

**Belts**

- Belts may need replacing if they squeak or show signs of cracking or splitting.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the belts and recommend adjustment or replacement when necessary.

**Brakes**

Brakes stop the vehicle and are crucial to safe driving.

- Signs of brake wear may include chirping, grinding, or squealing noises, or difficulty stopping.
- Trained dealer technicians have access to tools and equipment to inspect the brakes and recommend quality parts engineered for the vehicle.

**Fluids**

Proper fluid levels and approved fluids protect the vehicle's systems and components. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389* for GM approved fluids.

- Engine oil and windshield washer fluid levels should be checked at every fuel fill.
- Instrument cluster lights may come on to indicate that fluids may be low and need to be filled.

**Hoses**

Hoses transport fluids and should be regularly inspected to ensure that there are no cracks or leaks. With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can inspect the hoses and advise if replacement is needed.

**Lamps**

Properly working headlamps, taillamps, and brake lamps are important to see and be seen on the road.

- Signs that the headlamps need attention include dimming, failure to light, cracking, or damage. The brake lamps need to be checked periodically to ensure that they light when braking.
- With a multi-point inspection, your dealer can check the lamps and note any concerns.

**Shocks and Struts**

Shocks and struts help aid in control for a smoother ride.

- Signs of wear may include steering wheel vibration, bounce/sway while braking, longer stopping distance, or uneven tire wear.
- As part of the multi-point inspection, trained dealer technicians can visually inspect the shocks and struts for signs of leaking, blown seals, or damage, and can advise when service is needed.

**Tires**

Tires need to be properly inflated, rotated, and balanced. Maintaining the tires can save money and fuel, and can reduce the risk of tire failure.

- Signs that the tires need to be replaced include three or more visible treadwear indicators; cord or fabric showing through the rubber; cracks or cuts in the tread or sidewall; or a bulge or split in the tire.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect and recommend the right tires. Your dealer can also provide tire/wheel balancing services to ensure smooth vehicle operation at all speeds. Your dealer sells and services name brand tires.

**Vehicle Care**

To help keep the vehicle looking like new, vehicle care products are available from your dealer. For information on how to clean and protect the vehicle's interior and exterior, see *Interior Care* ⇨ *372* and *Exterior Care* ⇨ *368*.

**Wheel Alignment**

Wheel alignment is critical for ensuring that the tires deliver optimal wear and performance.

- Signs that the alignment may need to be adjusted include pulling, improper vehicle handling, or unusual tire wear.
- Your dealer has the required equipment to ensure proper wheel alignment.

**Windshield**

For safety, appearance, and the best viewing, keep the windshield clean and clear.

- Signs of damage include scratches, cracks, and chips.
- Trained dealer technicians can inspect the windshield and recommend proper replacement if needed.

**Wiper Blades**

Wiper blades need to be cleaned and kept in good condition to provide a clear view.

- Signs of wear include streaking, skipping across the windshield, and worn or split rubber.
- Trained dealer technicians can check the wiper blades and replace them when needed.

# Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

## Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Engine Oil | Engine oil meeting the dexos1™ specification of the proper SAE viscosity grade. AC Delco dexos1 Synthetic Blend is recommended. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *301*. |
| Engine Coolant | 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *309*. |
| Hydraulic Brake/Clutch System | DOT 3 Hydraulic Brake Fluid (GM Part No. 19299818, in Canada 19299819). |
| Windshield Washer | Automotive windshield washer fluid that meets regional freeze protection requirements. |
| Automatic Transmission | DEXRON®-HP Automatic Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 19300536, in Canada 19300537). |
| Manual Transmission (Except ATS-V) | DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid. |
| Manual Transmission (ATS-V) | Manual Transmission Fluid (GM Part No. 88861800, in Canada 88861801). |
| Transfer Case (All-Wheel Drive) | Transfer Case Fluid (GM Part No. 88861950, in Canada 88861951). |
| Rear Axle (Non-Limited Slip Differential) | Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089, in Canada 88863090). |
| Rear Axle (Limited Slip Differential) | DEXRON LS Gear 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88862624, in Canada 88862625). |

| Usage | Fluid/Lubricant |
|---|---|
| Electronic Limited Slip Differential (eLSD) Clutch System Lubricant (V-Series Only) | DEXRON®-VI Automatic Transmission Fluid. |
| Rear Axle/Front Axle (All-Wheel Drive) | Gear DEXRON MTF 75W-90 (GM Part No. 88863089, in Canada 88863090). |
| Chassis Lubrication | Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB. |
| Hood Latch Assembly, Secondary Latch, Pivots, Spring Anchor, and Release Pawl | Lubriplate Lubricant Aerosol (GM Part No. 89021668, in Canada 89021674) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB. |
| Key Lock Cylinders, Hood and Door Hinges | Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. 12346241, in Canada 10953474). |
| Weatherstrip Conditioning | Weatherstrip Lubricant (GM Part No. 3634770, in Canada 10953518) or Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. 12345579, in Canada 10953481). |

## Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number, or specification can be obtained from your dealer.

| Part | GM Part Number | ACDelco Part Number |
|---|---|---|
| Engine Air Cleaner/Filter | 20857930 | A3178C |
| Engine Oil Filter | | |
| 2.0L L4 Engine | 12640445 | PF64 |
| 2.5L L4 Engine | 12640445 | PF64 |
| 3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) | 19330000 | PF63E |
| 3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4) | 19330000 | PF63E |
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter | 13356916 | CF185 |
| Spark Plugs | | |
| 2.0L L4 Engine | 12647827 | 41-125 |
| 2.5L L4 Engine | 12627160 | 41-115 |
| 3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) | 12646780 | 41-130 |
| 3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4) | 12662396 | 41-147 |
| Wiper Blades | | |
| Driver Side – 55 cm (21.7 in) | 22905714 | — |
| Passenger Side – 45 cm (17.7 in) | 25882578 | — |

# Maintenance Records

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service, and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. Retain all maintenance receipts.

| Date | Odometer Reading | Serviced By | Maintenance Stamp | Services Performed |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |
| | | | | |

# Technical Data

**Vehicle Identification**
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) . . . . . 393
Service Parts Identification Label . . . . . 393

**Vehicle Data**
Capacities and Specifications . . . . . 394
Engine Drive Belt Routing . . . . 397

# Vehicle Identification

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This legal identifier is in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the left side of the vehicle. It can be seen through the windshield from outside. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and certificates of title and registration.

### Engine Identification

The eighth character in the VIN is the engine code. This code identifies the vehicle's engine, specifications, and replacement parts. See “Engine Specifications” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *394* for the vehicle's engine code.

## Service Parts Identification Label

This label, on the load floor under the spare tire cover in the trunk, has the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Model designation.
- Paint information.
- Production options and special equipment.

Do not remove this label from the vehicle.

# Vehicle Data

## Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in metric and English conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *389* for more information.

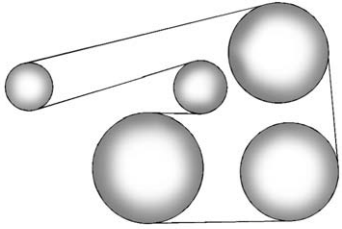
| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | Metric | English |
| Air Conditioning Refrigerant | For the air conditioning system refrigerant type and charge amount, see the refrigerant label under the hood. See your dealer for more information. | |
| Cooling System – Engine | | |
| 2.0L L4 Engine | 7.6 L | 8.0 qt |
| 2.5L L4 Engine | 6.6 L | 7.0 qt |
| 3.6L V6 Engine | 10.2 L | 10.8 qt |
| Engine Oil with Filter | | |
| 2.0L L4 Engine RWD | 4.7 L | 5.0 qt |
| 2.0L L4 Engine AWD | 5.7 L | 6.0 qt |
| 2.5L L4 Engine | 4.7 L | 5.0 qt |
| 3.6L V6 Engine RWD | 5.7 L | 6.0 qt |
| 3.6L V6 Engine AWD | 6.15 L | 6.5 qt |
| 3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine | 6.6 L | 7.0 qt |

| Application | Capacities | |
|---|---|---|
| | Metric | English |
| Fuel Tank | 62.5 L | 16.5 gal |
| Transfer Case – AWD | 0.8 L | 0.8 qt |
| Rear Axle (with non-limited slip) | 0.85 L | 0.9 qt |
| Rear Axle (with limited slip) | 1.0 L | 1.1 qt |
| Rear Axle (with electronic limited slip) (V-Series only) | 1.20 L | 1.27 qt |
| Electronic Limited Slip Differential (ELSD) Clutch System Lubricant (V-Series only) | 0.141 L | 0.149 qt |
| Wheel Nut Torque – ATS (Silver Tint Nut) | 140 N•m | 100 lb ft |
| Wheel Nut Torque – ATS-V (Blue Tint Nut) | 150 N•m | 110 lb ft |
| All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling. | | |

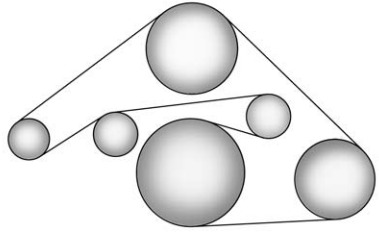
## Engine Specifications

| Engine | VIN Code | Transmission | Spark Plug Gap |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2.0L L4 Engine (LTG) | X | Automatic<br>Manual | 0.9 mm (0.035 in) |
| 2.5L L4 Engine | A | Automatic | 1.1 mm (0.043 in) |
| 3.6L V6 Engine (LGX) | S | Automatic | 0.80–0.90 mm (0.031–0.035 in) |
| 3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4) | Y | Automatic<br>Manual | 0.75–0.90 mm (0.030–0.035 in) |

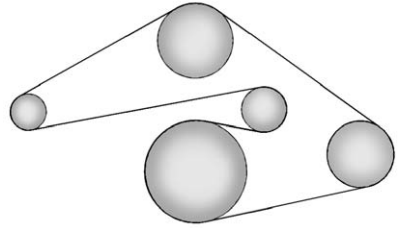
## Engine Drive Belt Routing



2.0L and 2.5L L4 Engines



3.6L V6 Engine (LGX)



3.6L V6 Twin Turbo Engine (LF4)

# Customer Information

**Customer Information**
Customer Satisfaction Procedure . . . . . 398
Customer Assistance Offices . . . . . 400
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users . . . . . 400
Online Owner Center . . . . . 401
Roadside Service . . . . . 401
Scheduling Service Appointments . . . . . 403
Courtesy Transportation Program . . . . . 404
Collision Damage Repair . . . . . 405
Service Publications Ordering Information . . . . . 407
Radio Frequency Statement . . . . . 408

**Reporting Safety Defects**
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government . . . . . 408
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government . . . . . 408
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors . . . . . 409

**Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy**
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy . . . . . 409
Event Data Recorders . . . . . 409
OnStar® . . . . . 410
Infotainment System . . . . . 410

# Customer Information

## Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of the vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

**STEP ONE :** Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of your dealership or the general manager.

**STEP TWO :** If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be

resolved by your dealership without further help, in the U.S., call the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center at 1-800–458–8006. In Canada, call the Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre at 1-888-446-2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest following Step One first.

**STEP THREE — U.S. Owners :** Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with the new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you can file with the Better Business Bureau (BBB) Auto Line® Program to enforce your rights.

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out-of-court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
3033 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 600
Arlington, VA 22201

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100
http://www.bbb.org/council/programs-services/dispute-handling-and-resolution/bbb-auto-line

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage, and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

**STEP THREE — Canadian Owners:** In the event that you do not feel your concerns have been addressed after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, General Motors of Canada

Limited wants you to be aware of its participation in a no-charge mediation/arbitration program. General Motors of Canada Limited has committed to binding arbitration of owner disputes involving factory-related vehicle service claims. The program provides for the review of the facts involved by an impartial third party arbiter, and may include an informal hearing before the arbiter. The program is designed so that the entire dispute settlement process, from the time you file your complaint to the final decision, should be completed in approximately 70 days. We believe our impartial program offers advantages over courts in most jurisdictions because it is informal, quick, and free of charge.

For further information concerning eligibility in the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP), call toll-free 1-800-207-0685, or call the Cadillac Customer Care Centre, 1-888-446-2000, or write to:

General Motors Cadillac Customer Care Centre
General Motors of Canada Limited
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

The inquiry should be accompanied by the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

## Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. However, if a customer wishes to write or e-mail Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to:

### United States and Puerto Rico

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169
www.Cadillac.com

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs))
Roadside Service: 1-800-224-1400

From U.S. Virgin Islands:

1-800-496-9994

### Canada

General Motors of Canada Limited
Cadillac Customer Care Centre,
Mail Code: CA1-163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7
www.gm.ca

1-888-446-2000 (English/French)
Cadillac Roadside Service:
1-800-882-1112

### Overseas

Contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

## Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can

communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-2622. TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.

## Online Owner Center

### Online Owner Experience (U.S.) my.cadillac.com

The Cadillac online owner experience allows interaction with Cadillac and keeps important vehicle-specific information in one place.

**Membership Benefits**

**(Vehicle Information) :** Download owner manuals and view vehicle-specific how-to videos.

**(Maintenance Information) :** View maintenance schedules, alerts, and OnStar onboard vehicle diagnostic information. Schedule service appointments.

**(Service History) :** View printable dealer-recorded service records and self-recorded service records.

**(Preferred Dealer Information) :** Select a dealer and view locations, maps, phone numbers, and hours.

**(Warranty Tracking Information) :** Track your vehicle's warranty information.

**(Recall Information) :** View active recalls or search by Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)* ⇨ *393*.

**(Other Account Information) :** View GM Card, SiriusXM Satellite radio (if equipped), and OnStar account information.

**(Live Chat Support) :** Chat with online help representatives.

See my.cadillac.com to register your vehicle.

### Cadillac Owner Centre (Canada) cadillacowner.ca

Visit the Cadillac Owner Centre:

- Chat live with online help representatives.
- Locate owner resources such as lease-end, financing, and warranty information.
- Retrieve favorite articles, quizzes, tips, and multimedia galleries organized into the Featured Articles and Auto Care Sections.
- Download owner manuals.
- Find Cadillac-recommended maintenance services.

## Roadside Service

U.S./Canada: 1-800-882-1112.

Text Telephone (TTY) Users (U.S. Only): 1-888-889-2438.

Service is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year.

### Calling for Service

When calling Roadside Service, have the following information ready:

- Your name, home address, and home telephone number.
- Telephone number of your location.

- Location of the vehicle.
- Model, year, color, and license plate number of the vehicle.
- Odometer reading, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), and delivery date of the vehicle.
- Description of the problem.

### Coverage

Services are provided for the duration of the vehicle's powertrain warranty.

In the U.S., anyone driving the vehicle is covered. In Canada, a person driving the vehicle without permission from the owner is not covered.

Roadside Service is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to make any changes or discontinue the Roadside Service program at any time without notification.

General Motors North America and Cadillac reserve the right to limit services or payment to an owner or driver if they decide the claims are made too often, or the same type of claim is made many times.

### Cadillac Owner Privileges™

- **Emergency Fuel Delivery:** Delivery of enough fuel for the vehicle to get to the nearest service station.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Service to unlock the vehicle if you are locked out. A remote unlock may be available if you have OnStar. For security reasons, the driver must present identification before this service is given.
- **Emergency Tow from a Public Road or Highway:** Tow to the nearest Cadillac dealer for warranty service, or if the vehicle was in a crash and cannot be driven. Assistance is not given when the vehicle is stuck in the sand, mud, or snow.
- **Flat Tire Change:** Service to change a flat tire with a spare tire. The spare tire, if equipped, must be in good condition and properly inflated. It is your responsibility for the repair or replacement of the tire if it is not covered by the warranty.
- **Battery Jump Start:** Service to jump start a dead battery.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the Powertrain warranty period. Items considered are hotel, meals, and rental car or a vehicle being delivered back to the customer, up to 805 km (500 mi).

### Cadillac Technician Roadside Service (U.S. Only)

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner in the United States with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

A dealer technician will travel to your location within a 30-mile radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership. Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

### Services Not Included in Roadside Service

- Impound towing caused by violation of any laws.
- Legal fines.
- Mounting, dismounting, or changing of snow tires, chains, or other traction devices.

Service is not provided if a vehicle is in an area that is not accessible to the service vehicle or is not a regularly traveled or maintained public road, which includes ice and winter roads. Off-road use is not covered.

### Services Specific to Canadian-Purchased Vehicles

- **Fuel delivery:** Reimbursement is up to 7 liters. Diesel fuel delivery may be restricted. Propane and other fuels are not provided through this service.
- **Lock-Out Service:** Vehicle registration is required.
- **Trip Interruption Benefits and Service:** Pre-authorization, original detailed receipts, and a copy of the repair orders are required. Once authorization has been received, the Roadside Service advisor will help you make arrangements and explain how to receive payment.
- **Alternative Service:** If assistance cannot be provided right away, the Roadside Service advisor may give you permission to get local emergency road service. You will receive payment, up to $100, after sending the original receipt to Roadside Service. Mechanical failures may be covered, however any cost for parts and labor for repairs not covered by the warranty are the owner responsibility.

## Scheduling Service Appointments

When the vehicle requires warranty service, contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising the service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If the vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If your dealer requests you to bring the vehicle for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same-day repair.

## Courtesy Transportation Program

To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for vehicles with the Bumper-to-Bumper (Base Warranty Coverage period in Canada), extended powertrain, and/or hybrid-specific warranties in both the U.S. and Canada.

Several Courtesy Transportation options are available to assist in reducing inconvenience when warranty repairs are required.

Courtesy Transportation is not a part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled “Limited Warranty and Owner Assistance Information” furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

### Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to do so, your dealer may offer the following transportation options:

#### Shuttle Service

This includes one-way or round-trip shuttle service within reasonable time and distance parameters of your dealer's area.

#### Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If overnight warranty repairs are needed, and public transportation is used, the expense must be supported by original receipts and within the maximum amount allowed by GM for shuttle service. If U.S. customers arrange their own transportation, limited reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts. See your dealer for information.

#### Courtesy Rental Vehicle

For an overnight warranty repair, the dealer may provide an available courtesy rental vehicle or provide for reimbursement of a rental vehicle. Reimbursement is limited and must be supported by original receipts as well as a signed and completed rental agreement and meet state/provincial, local, and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. Additional fees such as fuel usage charges, taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair are also your responsibility.

It may not be possible to provide a like vehicle as a courtesy rental.

### Additional Program Information

All program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Contact your dealer for specific availability.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change, or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

## Collision Damage Repair

If the vehicle is involved in a collision and it is damaged, have the damage repaired by a qualified technician using the proper equipment and quality replacement parts. Poorly performed collision repairs diminish the vehicle resale value, and safety performance can be compromised in subsequent collisions.

### Collision Parts

Genuine GM Collision parts are new parts made with the same materials and construction methods as the parts with which the vehicle was originally built. Genuine GM Collision parts are the best choice to ensure that the vehicle's designed appearance, durability, and safety are preserved. The use of Genuine GM parts can help maintain the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Recycled original equipment parts may also be used for repair. These parts are typically removed from vehicles that were total losses in prior crashes. In most cases, the parts being recycled are from undamaged sections of the vehicle. A recycled original equipment GM part may be an acceptable choice to maintain the vehicle's originally designed appearance and safety performance; however, the history of these parts is not known. Such parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any related failures are not covered by that warranty.

Aftermarket collision parts are also available. These are made by companies other than GM and may not have been tested for the vehicle. As a result, these parts may fit poorly, exhibit premature durability/corrosion problems, and may not perform properly in subsequent collisions. Aftermarket parts are not covered by the GM New Vehicle Limited Warranty, and any vehicle failure related to such parts is not covered by that warranty.

### Repair Facility

GM also recommends that you choose a collision repair facility that meets your needs before you ever need collision repairs. Your dealer may have a collision repair center with GM-trained technicians and state-of-the-art equipment, or be able to recommend a collision repair center that has GM-trained technicians and comparable equipment.

### Insuring the Vehicle

Protect your investment in the GM vehicle with comprehensive and collision insurance coverage. There are significant differences in the quality of coverage afforded by various insurance policy terms. Many insurance policies provide reduced protection to the GM vehicle by limiting compensation for damage repairs by using aftermarket collision parts. Some insurance companies will not

specify aftermarket collision parts. When purchasing insurance, we recommend that you ensure that the vehicle will be repaired with GM original equipment collision parts. If such insurance coverage is not available from your current insurance carrier, consider switching to another insurance carrier.

If the vehicle is leased, the leasing company may require you to have insurance that ensures repairs with Genuine GM Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) parts or Genuine Manufacturer replacement parts. Read the lease carefully, as you may be charged at the end of the lease for poor quality repairs.

## If a Crash Occurs

If there has been an injury, call emergency services for help. Do not leave the scene of a crash until all matters have been taken care of. Move the vehicle only if its position puts you in danger, or you are instructed to move it by a police officer.

Give only the necessary information to police and other parties involved in the crash.

For emergency towing see *Roadside Service* ⇨ *401*.

Gather the following information:

- Driver name, address, and telephone number.
- Driver license number.
- Owner name, address, and telephone number.
- Vehicle license plate number.
- Vehicle make, model, and model year.
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).
- Insurance company and policy number.
- General description of the damage to the other vehicle.

Choose a reputable repair facility that uses quality replacement parts. See “Collision Parts” earlier in this section.

If the airbag has inflated, see *What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?* ⇨ *76*.

## Managing the Vehicle Damage Repair Process

In the event that the vehicle requires damage repairs, GM recommends that you take an active role in its repair. If you have a pre-determined repair facility of choice, take the vehicle there, or have it towed there. Specify to the facility that any required replacement collision parts be original equipment parts, either new Genuine GM parts or recycled original GM parts. Remember, recycled parts will not be covered by the GM vehicle warranty.

Insurance pays the bill for the repair, but you must live with the repair. Depending on your policy limits, your insurance company may initially value the repair using aftermarket parts. Discuss this with the repair professional, and insist on Genuine GM parts. Remember, if the vehicle is leased, you may be obligated to have the vehicle

repaired with Genuine GM parts, even if your insurance coverage does not pay the full cost.

If another party's insurance company is paying for the repairs, you are not obligated to accept a repair valuation based on that insurance company's collision policy repair limits, as you have no contractual limits with that company. In such cases, you can have control of the repair and parts choices as long as the cost stays within reasonable limits.

## Service Publications Ordering Information

(U.S. and Canada Only)

### Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on the engines, transmission, axle, suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

### Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give additional technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of the vehicle.

### Owner Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The Owner Manual includes the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner Manual, and Warranty Manual.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00 – $40.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

Without Pouch: Owner Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE:
$25.00 (U.S.) plus handling and shipping fees.

### Current and Past Models

Technical Service Bulletins and Manuals are available for current and past model GM vehicles.

ORDER TOLL FREE:
1-800-551-4123 Monday – Friday
8:00 AM – 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), see Helm, Inc. at: www.helminc.com.

Or write to:

Helm, Incorporated
Attention: Customer Service
47911 Halyard Drive
Plymouth, MI 48170

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Make checks payable in U.S. funds.

## Radio Frequency Statement

This vehicle has systems that operate on a radio frequency that complies with Part 15/Part 18 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and with Industry Canada Standards RSS-GEN/210/216/220/251/310, ICES-001.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to any of these systems by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

# Reporting Safety Defects

## Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Avenue, S.E.
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

## Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that the vehicle has a safety defect, notify Transport Canada immediately, and notify General Motors of Canada Limited. Call Transport Canada at 1-800-333-0510 or write to:

Transport Canada
Road Safety Branch
80 rue Noel
Gatineau, QC J8Z 0A1

## Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, notify General Motors.

Call 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, call 1-888-446-2000, or write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Care Centre, Mail Code: CA1-163-005
General Motors of Canada Limited
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Onatario L1H 8P7

# Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

## Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note**

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

## OnStar®

If the vehicle is equipped with OnStar® and has an active subscription, additional data may be collected through the OnStar system. This includes information about the vehicle's operation; collisions involving the vehicle; the use of the vehicle and its features; and, in certain situations, the location and approximate GPS speed of the vehicle. Refer to the OnStar Terms and Conditions and Privacy Statement on the OnStar website.

See *OnStar Additional Information* ⇨ *415*.

## Infotainment System

If the vehicle is equipped with a navigation system as part of the infotainment system, use of the system may result in the storage of destinations, addresses, telephone numbers, and other trip information. See the infotainment manual for information on stored data and for deletion instructions.

# OnStar

**OnStar Overview**
OnStar Overview . . . . . 411

**OnStar Services**
Emergency . . . . . 412
Security . . . . . 412
Navigation . . . . . 412
Connections . . . . . 413
Diagnostics . . . . . 415

**OnStar Additional Information**
OnStar Additional Information . . . . . 415

## OnStar Overview

Voice Command Button

Blue OnStar Button

Red Emergency Button

This vehicle may be equipped with a comprehensive, in-vehicle system that can connect to an OnStar Advisor for Emergency, Security, Navigation, Connections, and Diagnostics Services. OnStar services may require a paid subscription and data plan. OnStar requires the vehicle battery and electrical system, cellular service, and GPS satellite signals to be available and operating. OnStar acts as a link to existing emergency service providers. OnStar may collect information about you and your vehicle, including location information. See OnStar's Terms & Conditions and Privacy Statement for more details including system limitations at www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

The OnStar system status light is next to the OnStar buttons. If the status light is:

- Solid Green: System is ready.
- Flashing Green: On a call.
- Red: Indicates a problem.
- Off: System is off. Press twice to speak with an OnStar Advisor.

Press or call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) to speak to an Advisor.

Press to:

- Make a call, end a call, or answer an incoming call.
- Give OnStar Hands-Free Calling voice commands.
- Give OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation voice commands.

- Obtain the Wi-Fi® hotspot name or SSID and password, if equipped.

Press On to connect to an Advisor to:

- Verify account information or update contact information.
- Get driving directions.
- Receive a Diagnostic check of the vehicle's key operating systems.
- Receive Roadside Assistance.
- Manage Wi-Fi Settings, if equipped.

Press SOS to get a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor available 24/7 to:

- Get help for an emergency.
- Be a Good Samaritan or respond to an AMBER Alert.
- Get assistance in severe weather or other crisis situations and find evacuation routes.

# OnStar Services

## Emergency

Emergency Services require an active, OnStar subscription plan (excludes Basic Plan). With Automatic Crash Response, built-in sensors can automatically alert a specially trained OnStar Advisor who is immediately connected in to the vehicle to help.

Press SOS for a priority connection to an OnStar Advisor who can contact emergency service providers, direct them to your exact location, and relay important information.

With OnStar Crisis Assist, specially trained Advisors are available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, to provide a central point of contact, assistance, and information during a crisis.

With Roadside Assistance, Advisors can locate a nearby service provider to help with a flat tire, a battery jump, or an empty gas tank.

## Security

If equipped, OnStar provides these services:

- With Stolen Vehicle Assistance, OnStar Advisors can use GPS to pinpoint the vehicle and help authorities quickly recover it.
- With Remote Ignition Block, if equipped, OnStar can block the engine from being restarted.
- With Stolen Vehicle Slowdown, if equipped, OnStar can work with law enforcement to gradually slow the vehicle down.

## Navigation

OnStar navigation requires a specific OnStar subscription plan.

Press On to receive Turn-by-Turn directions or have them sent to the vehicle’s navigation screen, if equipped.

### Turn-by-Turn Navigation

1. Press On to connect to an Advisor.

2. Request directions to be downloaded to the vehicle.
3. Follow the voice-guided commands.

### Using Voice Commands During a Planned Route

#### Cancel Route

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Cancel route.” System responds: “Do you want to cancel directions?”
3. Say “Yes.” System responds: “OK, request completed, thank you, goodbye.”

#### Route Preview

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Route preview.” System responds with the next three maneuvers.

#### Repeat

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Repeat.” System responds with the last direction given, then responds with “OnStar ready,” then a tone.

#### Get My Destination

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready,” then a tone.
2. Say “Get my destination.” System responds with the address and distance to the destination, then responds with “OnStar ready,” then a tone.

#### Destination Download

Subscribers can have directions sent to the vehicle’s navigation screen, if equipped.

Press , then ask the Advisor to download directions to the vehicle’s navigation system, if equipped. After the call ends, the navigation screen will provide prompts to begin driving directions. Routes that are sent to the navigation screen can only be canceled through the navigation system.

See www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

## Connections

The following OnStar services help with staying connected.

For coverage maps, see www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

#### OnStar Wi-Fi® Hotspot (If Equipped)

The vehicle may have a built-in Wi-Fi hotspot that provides access to the Internet and web content at 4G LTE speed. Up to seven mobile devices can be connected. A data plan is required. Use the in-vehicle controls only when it is safe to do so.

1. To retrieve Wi-Fi hotspot information, press , wait for the prompt, then say “Wi-Fi settings.” On some vehicles, touch Wi-Fi Settings on the screen.
2. The Wi-Fi settings will display the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password, and on some vehicles, the connection type

(no Internet connection, 3G, 4G, 4G LTE), and signal quality (poor, good, excellent).

3. To change the SSID or password, press On or call 1-888-4ONSTAR to connect with an Advisor.

**OnStar RemoteLink® Mobile App (If Equipped)**

Download the OnStar RemoteLink mobile app to select Apple® iOS, Android™, BlackBerry®, or Windows® mobile devices. OnStar Subscribers can access the following services from a mobile device:

- Remotely start/stop the vehicle, if factory-equipped.
- Lock/unlock doors, if equipped with automatic locks.
- Activate the horn and lamps.
- Check the vehicle's fuel level, oil life, or tire pressure, if factory-equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitor System.
- Send directions to the vehicle.
- Locate the vehicle on a map (U.S. market only).
- Turn the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot on/off, manage settings, and monitor data consumption, if equipped.

For OnStar RemoteLink information and compatibility, see www.onstar.com (U.S.) or www.onstar.ca (Canada).

## Remote Services

Contact an OnStar Advisor to unlock the doors or sound the horn and flash the lamps.

## OnStar AtYourService

OnStar Advisors can provide special offers from restaurants and retailers on your route, help locate hotels, or book a room.

## OnStar Hands-Free Calling

Make and receive calls with the built-in wireless calling service, which requires available minutes.

**Make a Call**

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready."
2. Say "Call." System responds: "Call. Please say the name or number to call."
3. Say the entire number without pausing, including a "1" and the area code. System responds: "OK, calling."

## Calling 911 Emergency

1. Press . System responds: "OnStar ready."
2. Say "Call." System responds: "Call. Please say the name or number to call."
3. Say "911" without pausing. System responds: "911."
4. Say "Call." System responds: "OK, dialing 911."

### Retrieve My Number

1. Press . System responds: “OnStar ready.”
2. Say “My number.” System responds: “Your OnStar Hands-Free Calling number is,” then says the number.

### End a Call

Press . System responds: “Call ended.”

### Verify Minutes and Expiration

Press and say “Minutes” then “Verify” to check how many minutes remain and their expiration date.

## Diagnostics

Advanced Diagnostics provides a status of the vehicle’s key systems with a monthly e-mail, or by pressing . Real-time Diagnostic Alerts can be sent by email or text. The Proactive Alerts feature (if available) can help predict and alert of potential upcoming maintenance issues with select components on the vehicle, before they become a problem.

OnStar can also monitor and report tire pressure, if the vehicle is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

# OnStar Additional Information

### In-Vehicle Audio Messages

Audio messages may play important information at the following times:

- Prior to vehicle purchase. Press  to set up an account.
- With the OnStar Basic Plan, every 60 days.
- After change in ownership and at 90 days.

### Transferring Service

Press  to request account transfer eligibility information. The Advisor can cancel or change account information.

### Selling/Transferring the Vehicle

Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) immediately to terminate your OnStar services if the vehicle is disposed of, sold, transferred, or if the lease ends.

### Reactivation for Subsequent Owners

Press On and follow the prompts to speak to an Advisor as soon as possible. The Advisor will update vehicle records and explain OnStar service options.

### How OnStar Service Works

Automatic Crash Response, Emergency Services, Crisis Assist, Stolen Vehicle Assistance, Advanced Diagnostics, Remote Services, Roadside Assistance, Turn-by-Turn Navigation, and Hands-Free Calling are available on most vehicles. Not all OnStar services are available everywhere or on all vehicles. For more information, a full description of OnStar services, system limitations, and OnStar terms and conditions:

- Call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).
- See www.onstar.com (U.S.).
- See www.onstar.ca (Canada).
- Call TTY 1-877-248-2080.
- Press On to speak with an Advisor.

OnStar services cannot work unless the vehicle is in a place where OnStar has an agreement with a wireless service provider for service in that area. The wireless service provider must also have coverage, network capacity, reception, and technology compatible with OnStar services. Service involving location information about the vehicle cannot work unless GPS signals are available, unobstructed, and compatible with the OnStar hardware. OnStar services may not work if the OnStar equipment is not properly installed or it has not been properly maintained. If equipment or software is added, connected, or modified, OnStar services may not work. Other problems beyond the control of OnStar — such as hills, tall buildings, tunnels, weather, electrical system design and architecture of the vehicle, damage to the vehicle in a crash, or wireless phone network congestion or jamming — may prevent service.

See *Radio Frequency Statement* ⇨ *408*.

### Services for People with Disabilities

Advisors provide services to help Subscribers with physical disabilities and medical conditions.

Press On to help:

- Locate a gas station with an attendant to pump gas.
- Find a hotel, restaurant, etc., that meets accessibility needs.
- Provide directions to the closest hospital or pharmacy in urgent situations.

### TTY Users

OnStar has the ability to communicate to deaf, hard-of-hearing, or speech-impaired customers while in the vehicle. The available dealer-installed TTY system can provide in-vehicle access to all OnStar services, except Virtual Advisor and OnStar Turn-by-Turn Navigation.

### OnStar Personal Identification Number (PIN)

A PIN is needed to access some OnStar services. The PIN will need to be changed the first time when speaking with an Advisor. To change the OnStar PIN, contact an OnStar Advisor by pressing On or calling 1-888-4ONSTAR.

### Warranty

OnStar equipment may be warranted as part of the vehicle warranty.

### Languages

The vehicle can be programmed to respond in multiple languages. Press On and ask for an Advisor. Advisors are available in English, Spanish, and French. Available languages may vary by country.

### Potential Issues

OnStar cannot perform Remote Door Unlock or Stolen Vehicle Assistance after the vehicle has been off continuously for five days without an ignition cycle. If the vehicle has not been started for five days, OnStar can contact Roadside Assistance or a locksmith to help gain access to the vehicle.

### Global Positioning System (GPS)

- Obstruction of the GPS can occur in a large city with tall buildings; in parking garages; around airports; in tunnels and underpasses; or in an area with very dense trees. If GPS signals are not available, the OnStar system should still operate to call OnStar. However, OnStar could have difficulty identifying the exact location.
- In emergency situations, OnStar can use the last stored GPS location to send to emergency responders.

A temporary loss of GPS can cause loss of the ability to send a Turn-by-Turn Navigation route. The Advisor may give a verbal route or may ask for a call back after the vehicle is driven into an open area.

### Cellular and GPS Antennas

Cellular reception is required for OnStar to send remote signals to the vehicle. Do not place items over or near the antenna to prevent blocking cellular and GPS signal reception.

### Unable to Connect to OnStar Message

If there is limited cellular coverage or the cellular network has reached maximum capacity, this message may come on. Press On to try the call again or try again after driving a few miles into another cellular area.

### Vehicle and Power Issues

OnStar services require a vehicle electrical system, wireless service, and GPS satellite technologies to be available and operating for features to function properly. These systems may not operate if the battery is discharged or disconnected.

## Add-on Electrical Equipment

The OnStar system is integrated into the electrical architecture of the vehicle. Do not add any electrical equipment. See *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *289*. Added electrical equipment may interfere with the operation of the OnStar system and cause it to not operate.

## Vehicle Software Updates

OnStar or GM may remotely deliver software updates or changes to the vehicle without further notice or consent. These updates or changes may enhance or maintain safety, security, or the operation of the vehicle or the vehicle systems. Software updates or changes may affect or erase data or settings that are stored in the vehicle, such as OnStar Hands-Free Calling name tags, saved navigation destinations, or pre-set radio stations. Neither OnStar nor GM is responsible for any affected or erased data or settings. These updates or changes may also collect personal information. Such collection is described in the OnStar privacy statement or separately disclosed at the time of installation. These updates or changes may also cause a system to automatically communicate with GM servers to collect information about vehicle system status, identify whether updates or changes are available, or deliver updates or changes. An active OnStar agreement constitutes consent to these software updates or changes and agreement that either OnStar or GM may remotely deliver them to the vehicle.

## Privacy

The complete OnStar Privacy Statement may be found at www.onstar.com (U.S.), or www.onstar.ca (Canada). We recommend that you review it. If you have any questions, call 1-888-4ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827) or press On to speak with an Advisor. Users of wireless communications are cautioned that the privacy of any information sent via wireless cellular communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept or access transmissions and private communications without consent.

## OnStar - Software Acknowledgements

Certain OnStar components include libcurl and unzip software and other third party software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with libcurl and unzip and for other third party software please see http://www.lg.com/global/support/opensource/index and https://www.onstar.com/us/en/support/getdocuments.html

**libcurl:**

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the

above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS," WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

**unzip:**

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Info-ZIP" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda, Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White.

This software is provided "as is," without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a

self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.

3. Altered versions–including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions–must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases–including, but not limited to, labeling of the altered versions with the names “Info-ZIP” (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), “Pocket UnZip,” “WiZ” or “MacZip” without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).

4. Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names “Info-ZIP,” “Zip,” “UnZip,” “UnZipSFX,” “WiZ,” “Pocket UnZip,” “Pocket Zip,” and “MacZip” for its own source and binary releases.

# Index


**A**

Accessories and Modifications . . . . . 291
Accessory Power . . . . . 235
Active Rev Match . . . . . 244
Adaptive Cruise Control . . . . . 258
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) . . . . . 164
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light . . . . . 129
Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . 289
Additional Information OnStar® . . . . . 414
Additional Maintenance and Care . . . . . 386
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats . . . . . 59
  Thigh Support . . . . . 59
Agreements
  Trademarks and License . . . . . 201
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine . . . . . 306
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment . . . . . 213
Air Vents . . . . . 212
Airbag System
  Check . . . . . 83
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? . . . . . 76
Airbag System (cont'd)
  Passenger Sensing System . . . . 77
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? . . . . . 76
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? . . . . . 76
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? . . . . . 74
  Where Are the Airbags? . . . . . 73
Airbags
  Adding Equipment to the Vehicle . . . . . 82
  Passenger Status Indicator . . . 120
  Readiness Light . . . . . 120
  Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles . . . . . 82
  System Check . . . . . 71
Alarm
  Vehicle Security . . . . . 45
Alert
  Lane Change . . . . . 275
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) . . . . . 274
All-Season Tires . . . . . 333
All-Wheel Drive . . . . . 245, 317
AM-FM Radio . . . . . 174
Antenna
  Backglass . . . . . 178
  Multi-band . . . . . 178

Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . 245
Warning Light . . . . . 124
Appearance Care
Exterior . . . . . 368
Interior . . . . . 372
Armrest Storage . . . . . 103
Assistance Systems for
Driving . . . . . 270
Assistance Systems for
Parking and Backing . . . . . 266
Audio
Theft-Deterrent Feature . . . . . 169
Audio Players
CD . . . . . 179
Automatic
Door Locks . . . . . 41
Headlamp System . . . . . 163
Transmission . . . . . 239
Transmission Fluid . . . . . 305
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode . . . . . 241
Shift Lock Control Function
Check . . . . . 318
Auxiliary Jack . . . . . 184

**B**

Backglass Antenna . . . . . 178
Battery
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver . . . . . 167
Power Protection . . . . . 167
Voltage and Charging
Messages . . . . . 136
Battery - North America . . . . 316, 362
Blade Replacement, Wiper . . . . . 319
Bluetooth
Overview . . . . . 191, 192, 196
Brake
System Warning Light . . . . . 123
Brakes . . . . . 314
Antilock . . . . . 245
Assist . . . . . 249
Fluid . . . . . 315
Parking . . . . . 246, 248
System Messages . . . . . 136
Braking . . . . . 216
Break-In, New Vehicle . . . . . 229
Bulb Replacement . . . . . 322
Back-up Lamps . . . . . 321
Halogen Bulbs . . . . . 320
Headlamp Aiming . . . . . 320
Headlamps . . . . . 320
Bulb Replacement (cont'd)
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting . . . . . 321
License Plate Lamps . . . . . 322
Buying New Tires . . . . . 348

**C**

Cadillac Premium Care
Maintenance . . . . . 379
Calibration . . . . . 109
California
Fuel Requirements . . . . . 280
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements . . . . . 291
California
Proposition
65 Warning . . . . . 291, 316, 362
Canadian Vehicle Owners . . . . . 2
Capacities and
Specifications . . . . . 393
Carbon Fiber . . . . . 230
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust . . . . . 238
Trunk . . . . . 42
Winter Driving . . . . . 224
Card Reader
SD . . . . . 184
Cargo
Tie-Downs . . . . . 103

Caution, Danger, and Warning .... 3
CD Player .....179
Chains, Tire .....352
Charging
Wireless .....111
Charging System Light .....121
Check
Malfunction Indicator
Engine Light ..... 121
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children .....85
Lower Anchors and Tethers
for Children .....90
Older Children .....84
Securing .....96, 98
Systems .....88
Circuit Breakers .....323
Cleaning
Exterior Care ..... 368
Interior Care ..... 372
Climate Control Systems
Dual Automatic ..... 203, 207
Clock .....109
Cluster, Instrument .....114
Clutch, Hydraulic .....305
Collision Damage Repair .....404
Compartments
Storage ..... 102
Compass .....109
Messages ..... 137
Competitive Driving Mode .....252
Compressor Kit, Tire Sealant ...354
Connections
OnStar® ..... 412
Control
Traction and Electronic
Stability ..... 249
Control of a Vehicle .....216
Convex Mirrors ..... 47
Coolant
Engine ..... 309
Engine Temperature Gauge ...118
Engine Temperature
Warning Light ..... 126
Cooling System .....307, 309
Engine Messages ..... 138
Courtesy Lamps .....165
Courtesy Transportation
Program .....403
Cruise Control .....256
Light ..... 129
Messages ..... 137
Cruise Control, Adaptive .....258
Customer Assistance .....399
Offices ..... 399
Customer Assistance (cont'd)
Text Telephone (TTY)
Users ..... 399
Customer Information
Service Publications
Ordering Information ..... 406
Customer Satisfaction
Procedure .....397

## D

Damage Repair, Collision .....404
Danger, Warning, and Caution .... 3
Data Recorder
Performance ..... 186
Data Recorders, Event .....408
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) .....163
Defensive Driving .....216
Delayed Locking ..... 40
Diagnostics
OnStar® ..... 414
Distracted Driving .....215
Dome Lamps .....165
Door
Ajar Messages ..... 138
Delayed Locking .....40
Locks .....39
Power Locks .....40
Rear Seat Pass-Through .....65

Drive Belt Routing, Engine . . . . . 396
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive . . . . . 245, 317
Driver Assistance Systems . . . . . 266
Driver Information
Center (DIC) . . . . . 130
Driver Mode Control . . . . . 251
Driving
Assistance Systems . . . . . 270
Characteristics and
Towing Tips . . . . . 284
Competitive . . . . . 252
Defensive . . . . . 216
Drunk . . . . . 216
For Better Fuel Economy . . . . . 29
Hill and Mountain Roads . . . . . 223
If the Vehicle is Stuck . . . . . 225
Loss of Control . . . . . 218
Off-Road Recovery . . . . . 217
Track Events and
Competitive . . . . . 218
Vehicle Load Limits . . . . . 226
Wet Roads . . . . . 222
Winter . . . . . 224
Dual Automatic Climate
Control System . . . . . 203, 207

**E**

Easy Entry Seat . . . . . 56
Electrical Equipment,
Add-On . . . . . 289
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block . . . . . 324
Fuses and Circuit Breakers . . . 323
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block . . . . . 327
Overload . . . . . 323
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block . . . . . 329
Emergency
OnStar® . . . . . 411
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter . . . . . 306
Check and Service Engine
Soon Light . . . . . 121
Compartment Overview . . . . . 294
Coolant . . . . . 309
Coolant Temperature
Gauge . . . . . 118
Coolant Temperature
Warning Light . . . . . 126
Cooling System . . . . . 307, 309
Cooling System Messages . . . 138
Drive Belt Routing . . . . . 396
Engine (cont'd)
Exhaust . . . . . 238
Heater . . . . . 234
Oil Life System . . . . . 303
Oil Messages . . . . . 138
Oil Pressure Light . . . . . 127
Overheating . . . . . 312
Power Messages . . . . . 139
Running While Parked . . . . . 238
Starting . . . . . 232
Entry Lighting . . . . . 167
Equipment, Towing . . . . . 288
Event Data Recorders . . . . . 408
Exit Lighting . . . . . 167
Extender, Safety Belt . . . . . 70
Exterior Lamp Controls . . . . . 160
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder . . . 162
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver . . . . . 167

**F**

Features
Memory . . . . . 14
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner . . . . . 306
Flash-to-Pass . . . . . 162
Flashers, Hazard Warning . . . . . 164
Flat Tire . . . . . 353
Floor Mats . . . . . 375

Fluid
Automatic Transmission ..... 305
Brakes ..... 315
Washer ..... 313
Folding Mirrors ..... 48
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) System ..... 270
Frequency Statement
Radio ..... 407
Front Automatic Braking
(FAB) System ..... 273
Front Seats
Heated ..... 62
Fuel ..... 279
Additives ..... 280
Economy Driving ..... 29
Filling a Portable Fuel
Container ..... 283
Filling the Tank ..... 280
Foreign Countries ..... 280
Gauge ..... 118
Low Fuel Warning Light ..... 128
Requirements, California ..... 280
System Messages ..... 139
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block ..... 324
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 323
Fuses (cont'd)
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block ..... 327
Rear Compartment Fuse
Block ..... 329

**G**

Garage Door Opener ..... 156
Programming ..... 156
Gauges
Engine Coolant
Temperature ..... 118
Fuel ..... 118
Odometer ..... 117
Speedometer ..... 117
Tachometer ..... 117
Trip Odometer ..... 117
Warning Lights and
Indicators ..... 113
General Information
Service and Maintenance ..... 377
Towing ..... 284
Vehicle Care ..... 291
Glove Box ..... 103

**H**

Halogen Bulbs ..... 320
Hazard Warning Flashers ..... 164
Head Restraints ..... 54
Head-up Display ..... 132
Headlamps
Adaptive Forward
Lighting (AFL) ..... 164
Aiming ..... 320
Automatic ..... 163
Bulb Replacement ..... 320
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) ..... 163
Flash-to-Pass ..... 162
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting ..... 321
High-Beam On Light ..... 128
High/Low Beam Changer ..... 162
Lamps On Reminder ..... 129
Washer ..... 108
Heated
Steering Wheel ..... 106
Heated Front Seats ..... 62
Heated Mirrors ..... 48
Heater
Engine ..... 234
High-Beam On Light ..... 128
High-Speed Operation ..... 341

Hill and Mountain Roads . . . . . 223
Hill Start Assist (HSA) . . . . . 249
Home Page . . . . . 171
Hood . . . . . 293
Horn . . . . . 107
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly . . . . . 66
Hydraulic Clutch . . . . . 305

**I**

Ignition Positions . . . . . 230
Immobilizer . . . . . 46
Indicator
  Vehicle Ahead . . . . . 125
Infants and Young Children, Restraints . . . . . 85
Infotainment . . . . . 168
Infotainment System . . . . . 409
Instrument Cluster . . . . . 114
Instrument Panel
  Storage Area . . . . . 102
Instrument Panel Overview . . . . . 6
Interior Rearview Mirrors . . . . . 49
Introduction . . . . . 2

**J**

Jack
  Auxiliary . . . . . 184
Jump Starting - North America . . . . . 362

**K**

Key and Lock Messages . . . . . 139
Keyless Entry
  Remote (RKE) System . . . . . 31
Keys . . . . . 30

**L**

Labeling, Tire Sidewall . . . . . 335
Lamps
  Courtesy . . . . . 165
  Daytime Running (DRL) . . . . . 163
  Dome . . . . . 165
  Exterior Controls . . . . . 160
  Exterior Lamps Off Reminder . . . . . 162
  Exterior Lighting Battery Saver . . . . . 167
  License Plate . . . . . 322
  Malfunction Indicator . . . . . 121
  Messages . . . . . 140
  On Reminder . . . . . 129
Lamps (cont'd)
  Reading . . . . . 166
Lane Change Alert (LCA) . . . . . 275
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) . . . . . 276
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) . . . . . 277
Lane Keep Assist Light . . . . . 125
Lap-Shoulder Belt . . . . . 67
LATCH System
  Replacing Parts after a Crash . . . . . 96
LATCH, Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children . . . . . 90
LED Lighting . . . . . 321
Light
  Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light . . . . . 129
  Parking Brake . . . . . 124
Lighting
  Adaptive Forward . . . . . 164
  Entry . . . . . 167
  Exit . . . . . 167
  Illumination Control . . . . . 165
  LED . . . . . 321
Lights . . . . . 125
  Airbag Readiness . . . . . 120
  Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning . . . . . 124

Lights (cont'd)
Brake System Warning ..... 123
Charging System ..... 121
Cruise Control ..... 129
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning ..... 126
Engine Oil Pressure ..... 127
Flash-to-Pass ..... 162
High-Beam On ..... 128
High/Low Beam Changer ..... 162
Low Fuel Warning ..... 128
Safety Belt Reminders .....119
Security ..... 128
Service Electric Parking Brake ..... 124
StabiliTrak® OFF ..... 126
Tire Pressure ..... 127
Traction Control System (TCS)/StabiliTrak® ..... 126
Traction Off ..... 125
Limited-Slip Rear Axle .....255
Locks
Automatic Door .....41
Delayed Locking .....40
Door .....39
Lockout Protection .....41
Power Door .....40
Safety .....42
Loss of Control .....218
Low Fuel Warning Light .....128
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) ..... 90
Lumbar Adjustment ..... 59
Front Seats .....59

**M**

Maintenance Records ..... 392
Maintenance and Care Additional ..... 386
Maintenance Schedule .....379
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ..... 389
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....121
Manual Mode .....241
Manual Transmission .....242
Fluid ..... 305
Matching Active Rev ..... 244
Memory Features ..... 14
Memory Seats ..... 60
Messages
Airbag System ..... 145
Battery Voltage and Charging ..... 136
Brake System ..... 136
Messages (cont'd)
Compass ..... 137
Door Ajar ..... 138
Engine Cooling System ..... 138
Engine Oil ..... 138
Engine Power ..... 139
Fuel System ..... 139
Key and Lock ..... 139
Lamp ..... 140
Object Detection System ..... 140
Ride Control System ..... 143
Safety Belt ..... 145
Security ..... 145
Service Vehicle ..... 146
Starting the Vehicle ..... 146
Tire ..... 146
Transmission ..... 147
Vehicle ..... 136
Vehicle Reminder ..... 148
Vehicle Speed ..... 148
Washer Fluid ..... 148
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview .....49
Convex .....47
Folding .....48
Heated .....48
Manual Rearview .....49

Mirrors (cont'd)
Power . . . . . 48
Tilt in Reverse . . . . . 48
Mirrors, Interior Rearview . . . . . 49
Mode . . . . . 251
Driver Control . . . . . 251
Monitor System, Tire
Pressure . . . . . 341
Multi-band Antenna . . . . . 178

**N**

Navigation
OnStar® . . . . . 411
New Vehicle Break-In . . . . . 229

**O**

Object Detection System
Messages . . . . . 140
Odometer . . . . . 117
Trip . . . . . 117
Off-Road
Recovery . . . . . 217
Oil
Engine . . . . . 301
Engine Oil Life System . . . . . 303
Messages . . . . . 138
Pressure Light . . . . . 127
Older Children, Restraints . . . . . 84
Online Owner Center . . . . . 400
OnStar . . . . . 409
OnStar System . . . . . 185
OnStar® Additional
Information . . . . . 414
OnStar® Connections . . . . . 412
OnStar® Diagnostics . . . . . 414
OnStar® Emergency . . . . . 411
OnStar® Navigation . . . . . 411
OnStar® Overview . . . . . 410
OnStar® Security . . . . . 411
Ordering
Service Publications . . . . . 406
Outlets
Power . . . . . 110
Overheating, Engine . . . . . 312
Overview . . . . . 170

**P**

Park
Shifting Into . . . . . 235
Shifting Out of . . . . . 236
Parking . . . . . 237
Brake . . . . . 246, 248
Brake and P (Park)
Mechanism Check . . . . . 319
Over Things That Burn . . . . . 237
Parking Brake
Light . . . . . 124
Parking or Backing
Assistance Systems . . . . . 266
Passenger Airbag Status
Indicator . . . . . 120
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter . . . . . 213
Passenger Sensing System . . . . . 77
Perchlorate Materials
Requirements, California . . . . . 291
Performance Data
Recorder (PDR) . . . . . 186
Personalization
Vehicle . . . . . 148
Phone
Bluetooth . . . . . 191, 192, 196
Port
USB . . . . . 181
Power
Door Locks . . . . . 40
Mirrors . . . . . 48
Outlets . . . . . 110
Protection, Battery . . . . . 167
Retained Accessory (RAP) . . . 235
Seat Adjustment . . . . . 56
Windows . . . . . 49
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts . . . 70
Premium Care Maintenance
Cadillac . . . . . 379

Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording ..... 408
Program
Courtesy Transportation ..... 403
Proposition
65 Warning,
California .....291, 316, 362

R

Radio Frequency Statement ....407
Radio Reception .....177
Radios
AM-FM Radio ..... 174
Satellite ..... 176
Reading Lamps .....166
Rear Axle
Limited-Slip ..... 255
Rear Seat Pass-Through Door ... 65
Rear Seats ..... 63
Rearview Mirrors ..... 49
Automatic Dimming .....49
Reclining Seatbacks ..... 59
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants .....389
Records
Maintenance ..... 392
Recreational Vehicle Towing ....366
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE)
System ..... 31
Remote Vehicle Start ..... 37
Replacement Bulbs .....322
Replacement Parts
Airbags .....83
Maintenance ..... 391
Replacing Airbag System ..... 83
Replacing LATCH System
Parts after a Crash ..... 96
Replacing Safety Belt System
Parts after a Crash ..... 71
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government ..... 407
General Motors ..... 408
U.S. Government ..... 407
Restraints
Where to Put .....89
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) .....235
Reverse Tilt Mirrors ..... 48
Ride Control Systems
Limited Slip Rear Axle ..... 255
Messages ..... 143
Roads
Driving, Wet ..... 222
Roadside Service .....400
Roof
Sunroof .....52
Rotation, Tires .....345
Routing, Engine Drive Belt .....396
Run-Flat Tires .....333
Running the Vehicle While
Parked .....238

S

Safety Belts ..... 65
Care .....70
Extender .....70
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly .....66
Lap-Shoulder Belt .....67
Messages ..... 145
Reminders .....119
Replacing after a Crash .....71
Use During Pregnancy .....70
Safety Defects Reporting
Canadian Government ..... 407
General Motors ..... 408
U.S. Government ..... 407
Safety Locks ..... 42
Safety System Check ..... 70
Satellite Radio .....176
Scheduling Appointments .....402
SD Card Reader .....184
Sealant Kit, Tire .....354
Seats
Easy Entry Seat .....56
Head Restraints .....54

Seats (cont'd)
Heated Front .....62
Lumbar Adjustment, Front .....59
Memory.....60
Power Adjustment, Front .....56
Rear .....63
Reclining Seatbacks .....59
Securing Child Restraints .... 96, 98
Security
Light ..... 128
Messages ..... 145
OnStar® .....411
Vehicle .....45
Vehicle Alarm .....45
Self-Sealing Tires .....334
Service .....213
Accessories and
Modifications ..... 291
Doing Your Own Work ..... 292
Engine Soon Light ..... 121
Maintenance Records ..... 392
Maintenance, General
Information ..... 377
Parts Identification Label ..... 392
Publications Ordering
Information ..... 406
Scheduling Appointments..... 402
Vehicle Messages ..... 146
Service Electric Parking
Brake Light .....124
Services
Special Application ..... 385
Servicing the Airbag ..... 82
Shift Lock Control Function
Check, Automatic
Transmission .....318
Shifting
Into Park ..... 235
Out of Park ..... 236
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ...274
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change .....164
Software Updates .....174
Special Application Services ....385
Specifications and
Capacities .....393
Speedometer ..... 117
StabiliTrak
OFF Light ..... 126
Start Assist, Hills .....249
Start Vehicle, Remote ..... 37
Starter Switch Check .....318
Starting the Engine .....232
Starting the Vehicle
Messages .....146
Steering .....217
Steering (cont'd)
Heated Wheel ..... 106
Wheel Adjustment ..... 105
Wheel Controls ..... 106
Storage Areas
Armrest ..... 103
Glove Box ..... 103
Instrument Panel ..... 102
Storage Compartments .....102
Storing the Tire Sealant and
Compressor Kit .....361
Stuck Vehicle .....225
Summer Tires .....335
Sun Visors ..... 51
Sunroof ..... 52
Symbols ..... 3
System
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) ..... 270
Infotainment ..... 168, 409
Systems
Driver Assistance ..... 266

## T

Tachometer ..... 117
Text Telephone (TTY) Users ....399
Theft-Deterrent Systems ..... 46
Immobilizer .....46
Thigh Support Adjustment ..... 59

Time . . . . . 109
Tires . . . . . 332
All-Season . . . . . 333
Buying New Tires . . . . . 348
Chains . . . . . 352
Designations . . . . . 336
Different Size . . . . . 349
If a Tire Goes Flat . . . . . 353
Inspection . . . . . 345
Messages . . . . . 146
Pressure . . . . . 341
Pressure Light . . . . . 127
Pressure Monitor Operation . . 342
Pressure Monitor System . . . . . 341
Rotation . . . . . 345
Run-Flat . . . . . 333
Sealant and Compressor Kit . . . . . 354
Sealant and Compressor Kit, Storing . . . . . 361
Self-Sealing . . . . . 334
Sidewall Labeling . . . . . 335
Terminology and Definitions . . 337
Uniform Tire Quality Grading . . . . . 349
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance . . . . . 351
Wheel Replacement . . . . . 351
Tires (cont'd)
When It Is Time for New Tires . . . . . 347
Winter . . . . . 333
Towing
Driving Characteristics . . . . . 284
Equipment . . . . . 288
General Information . . . . . 284
Recreational Vehicle . . . . . 366
Trailer . . . . . 286, 288
Vehicle . . . . . 365
Track Events and Competitive Driving . . . . . 218
Traction
Control System (TCS)/ StabiliTrak® Light . . . . . 126
Limited-Slip Rear Axle . . . . . 255
Off Light . . . . . 125
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control . . . . . 249
Trademarks and License Agreements . . . . . 201
Trailer
Towing . . . . . 286, 288
Transmission
Automatic . . . . . 239
Fluid, Automatic . . . . . 305
Fluid, Manual . . . . . 305
Transmission (cont'd)
Messages . . . . . 147
Transportation Program, Courtesy . . . . . 403
Trip Odometer . . . . . 117
Trunk . . . . . 42
Turn and Lane-Change Signals . . . . . 164

## U

Uniform Tire Quality Grading . . . 349
Universal Remote System . . . . . 156
Operation . . . . . 159
Programming . . . . . 156
Updates
Software . . . . . 174
USB Port . . . . . 181
Using This Manual . . . . . 2

## V

Vehicle
Alarm System . . . . . 45
Canadian Owners . . . . . 2
Control . . . . . 216
Identification Number (VIN) . . . 392
Load Limits . . . . . 226
Messages . . . . . 136
Personalization . . . . . 148
Reminder Messages . . . . . 148

Vehicle (cont'd)
Remote Start . . . . . 37
Security . . . . . 45
Speed Messages . . . . . 148
Towing . . . . . 365
Vehicle Ahead Indicator . . . . . 125
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit . . . . . 361
Tire Pressure . . . . . 339
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy . . . . . 408
Ventilation, Air . . . . . 212
Visors . . . . . 51

**W**

Warning
Brake System Light . . . . . 123
Caution and Danger . . . . . 3
Lane Departure (LDW) . . . . . 276
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators . . . . . 113
Warnings
Hazard Flashers . . . . . 164
Washer Fluid . . . . . 313
Messages . . . . . 148
Washer, Headlamps . . . . . 108
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance . . 351
Wheels (cont'd)
Different Size . . . . . 349
Replacement . . . . . 351
When It Is Time for New Tires . . . . . 347
Where to Put the Restraint . . . . . 89
Windows . . . . . 49
Power . . . . . 49
Windshield
Replacement . . . . . 320
Wiper/Washer . . . . . 107
Winter
Driving . . . . . 224
Winter Tires . . . . . 333
Wiper Blade Replacement . . . . . 319
Wireless Charging . . . . . 111